# CrossMark

# **Dynamics of the nonlinear Klein–Gordon equation in the nonrelativistic limit**

**S. Pasquali[1](http://orcid.org/0000-0003-2712-2000)**

Received: 3 July 2018 / Accepted: 27 October 2018 / Published online: 3 November 2018 © Fondazione Annali di Matematica Pura ed Applicata and Springer-Verlag GmbH Germany, part of Springer Nature 2018

# **Abstract**

We study the nonlinear Klein–Gordon (NLKG) equation on a manifold *M* in the nonrelativistic limit, namely as the speed of light *c* tends to infinity. In particular, we consider a higher-order normalized approximation of NLKG (which corresponds to the NLS at order  $r = 1$ ) and prove that when *M* is a smooth compact manifold or  $\mathbb{R}^d$ , the solution of the approximating equation approximates the solution of the NLKG locally uniformly in time. When  $M = \mathbb{R}^d$ ,  $d > 2$ , we also prove that for  $r > 2$  small radiation solutions of the order*r* normalized equation approximate solutions of the nonlinear NLKG up to times of order  $\mathcal{O}(c^{2(r-1)})$ . We also prove a global existence result uniform with respect to c for the NLKG equation on  $\mathbb{R}^3$  with cubic nonlinearity for small initial data and Strichartz estimates for the Klein–Gordon equation with potential on  $\mathbb{R}^3$ .

**Keywords** Nonrelativistic limit · Nonlinear Klein–Gordon equation · Birkhoff normal form · Long-time behavior

**Mathematics Subject Classification** 37K55 · 70H08 · 70K45 · 81Q05

# **1 Introduction**

In this paper the nonlinear Klein–Gordon (NLKG) equation in the nonrelativistic limit, namely as the speed of light *c* tends to infinity, is studied. Formal computations going back to the first half of the last century suggest that, up to corrections of order  $\mathcal{O}(c^{-2})$ , the system should be described by the nonlinear Schrödinger (NLS) equation. Subsequent mathematical results have shown that the NLS describes the dynamics over timescales of order  $\mathcal{O}(1)$ .

The nonrelativistic limit for the Klein–Gordon equation on  $\mathbb{R}^d$  has been extensively studied over more then 30 years, and essentially all the known results only show convergence of the

 $\boxtimes$  S. Pasquali spasquali@mat.uniroma3.it

This research was supported by by ERC Grant 306414 HamPDEs under FP7.

<sup>1</sup> Dipartimento di Matematica e Fisica, Università degli Studi Roma Tre, Largo S. Leonardo Murialdo 1, 00146 Rome, Italy

solutions of NLKG to the solutions of the approximate equation for times of order  $O(1)$ . The typical statement ensures convergence locally uniformly in time. In a first series of results (see  $[35,42,57]$  $[35,42,57]$  $[35,42,57]$  $[35,42,57]$ ) it was shown that, if the initial data are in a certain smoothness class, then the solutions converge in a weaker topology to the solutions of the approximating equation. These are informally called "results with loss of smoothness." Although in this paper a longer time convergence is proved, our results also fill in this group.

Some other results, essentially due to Machihara, Masmoudi, Nakanishi and Ozawa, ensure convergence without loss of regularity in the energy space, again over timescales of order  $\mathcal{O}(1)$  (see [\[36](#page-68-1)[,38](#page-68-2)[,44](#page-69-2)]).

Concerning radiation solutions there is a remarkable result (see [\[43](#page-69-3)]) by Nakanishi, who considered the complex NLKG in the defocusing case, in which it is known that all solutions scatter (and thus the scattering operator exists), and proved that the scattering operator of the NLKG equation converges to the scattering operator of the NLS. It is important to remark that this result is not contained in the one proved here and does not contain it.

Recently Lu and Zhang in [\[34\]](#page-68-3) proved a result which concerns the NLKG with a quadratic nonlinearity. Here the problem is that the typical scale over which the standard approach allows to control the dynamics is  $\mathcal{O}(c^{-1})$ , while the dynamics of the approximating equation takes place over timescales of order  $\mathcal{O}(1)$ . In that work the authors are able to use a normal form transformation (in a spirit quite different from ours) in order to extend the time of validity of the approximation over the  $\mathcal{O}(1)$  timescale. We did not try to reproduce or extend that result.

In this paper we prove two kinds of results for the dynamics of NLKG: a global existence result (see Theorem [1\)](#page-3-0) which is uniform for sufficiently large values of  $c > 0$ , and approximation results (see Theorems [2](#page-4-0) and [3\)](#page-4-1) that allow to approximate solutions of NLKG by solutions of suitable higher-order NLS equations. Approximation results are different in the case where the equation lives on  $\mathbb{R}^d$  or in a compact manifold: When *M* is a smooth compact manifold or  $\mathbb{R}^d$  the solution of NLS approximates the solution of the original equation locally uniformly in time; when  $M = \mathbb{R}^d$ ,  $d \ge 2$ , it is possible to prove that for  $r > 1$  solutions of the order-*r* normalized equation approximate solutions of the NLKG equation up to times of order  $\mathcal{O}(c^{2(r-1)})$ .

The present paper can be thought as an example in which techniques from canonical perturbation theory are used together with results from the theory of dispersive equations in order to understand the singular limit of Hamiltonian PDEs. In this context, the nonrelativistic limit of the NLKG is a relevant example.

The issue of nonrelativistic limit has been studied also in the more general Maxwell– Klein–Gordon system [\[10](#page-67-0)[,39\]](#page-68-4), in the Klein–Gordon–Zakharov system [\[40](#page-68-5)[,41](#page-68-6)], in the Hartree equation [\[17\]](#page-68-7) and in the pseudo-relativistic NLS [\[18\]](#page-68-8). However, all these results proved the convergence of the solutions of the limiting system in the energy space ([\[17](#page-68-7)] studied also the convergence in  $H^k$ ), *locally uniformly in time*; no information could be obtained about the convergence of solutions for longer (in the case of NLKG, which means *c*-dependent) timescales. On the other hand, in the recent [\[27\]](#page-68-9), which studies the nonrelativistic limit of the Vlasov–Maxwell system, the authors were able to prove a stability result for solutions which lie in a neighborhood of stable equilibria of the system; this result is valid for times which are polynomial in terms of the inverse of the speed of light, and does not exhibit loss of smoothness.

Other examples of singular perturbation problems that have been studied either with canonical perturbation theory or with multiscale analysis are the problem of the continuous approximation of lattice dynamics (see, e.g., [\[6](#page-67-1)[,51\]](#page-69-4)) and the semiclassical analysis of Schrödinger operators (see, e.g., [\[1](#page-67-2)[,46](#page-69-5)]). In the framework of lattice dynamics, the timescale covered by all known results is that typical of averaging theorems, which corresponds to our  $O(1)$  timescale. The methods developed in the present paper should allow to extend the time of validity of those results.

The paper is organized as follows. In Sect. [2](#page-2-0) we state the results of the paper, together with examples and comments. In Sect. [3](#page-6-0) we show Strichartz estimates for the linear KG equation and for the KG equation with potential, as well as a global existence result uniform with respect to  $c$  for the cubic NLKG equation on  $\mathbb{R}^3$ . In Sect. [4](#page-10-0) we state the main abstract result of the paper. In Sect. [5](#page-13-0) we present the proof of the abstract result, which is based on a Galerkin cutoff technique, along with remarks and variant of the result. Next, in Sect. [6](#page-18-0) we apply the abstract theorem to the NLKG equation, making explicit computations of the normal form at the first and at the second step. In Sect. [7](#page-24-0) we deduce a result about the approximation of solutions locally uniformly in time. In Sect. [8](#page-26-0) we study the properties of the normalized equation, namely its dispersive properties in the linear case and its well-posedness for solutions with small initial data in the nonlinear case. In Sect. [9](#page-54-0) we discuss the approximation for longer timescales: In particular, to deduce the latter we exploit some dispersive properties of the KG equation reported in Sect. [3.](#page-6-0) Finally, in "Appendix A" we report all technical lemmata used in Birkhoff normal form estimates (the approach is essentially the same as in [\[2](#page-67-3)]), and in "Appendix B" we prove some interpolation theory results for relativistic Sobolev spaces, and we exploit them to deduce Strichartz estimates for the KG equation with potential.

# <span id="page-2-0"></span>**2 Statement of the main results**

The NLKG equation describes the motion of a spinless particle with mass  $m > 0$ . Consider first the real NLKG

$$
\frac{\hbar^2}{2mc^2}u_{tt} - \frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\Delta u + \frac{mc^2}{2}u + \lambda|u|^{2(l-1)}u = 0,
$$
\n(1)

where  $c > 0$  is the speed of light,  $\hbar > 0$  is the Planck constant,  $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}, l \ge 2, c > 0$ .

In the following  $m = 1$ ,  $\hbar = 1$ . As anticipated above, one is interested in the behavior of solutions as  $c \to \infty$ .

First it is convenient to reduce Eq. [\(1\)](#page-2-1) to a first-order system, by making the following symplectic change variables

$$
\psi := \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \left[ \left( \frac{\langle \nabla \rangle_c}{c} \right)^{1/2} u - i \left( \frac{c}{\langle \nabla \rangle_c} \right)^{1/2} v \right], \quad v = u_t/c^2,
$$

where

<span id="page-2-1"></span>
$$
\langle \nabla \rangle_c := (c^2 - \Delta)^{1/2},\tag{2}
$$

which reduces [\(1\)](#page-2-1) to the form

$$
-i\psi_t = c\langle \nabla \rangle_c \psi + \frac{\lambda}{2^l} \left(\frac{c}{\langle \nabla \rangle_c}\right)^{1/2} \left[ \left(\frac{c}{\langle \nabla \rangle_c}\right)^{1/2} (\psi + \bar{\psi}) \right]^{2l-1},\tag{3}
$$

which is Hamiltonian with Hamiltonian function given by

$$
H(\bar{\psi}, \psi) = \langle \bar{\psi}, c \langle \nabla \rangle_c \psi \rangle + \frac{\lambda}{2l} \int \left[ \left( \frac{c}{\langle \nabla \rangle_c} \right)^{1/2} \frac{\psi + \bar{\psi}}{\sqrt{2}} \right]^{2l} dx.
$$
 (4)

<span id="page-2-3"></span><span id="page-2-2"></span> $\circled{2}$  Springer

To state our first result, introduce for any  $k \in \mathbb{R}$  and for any  $1 \lt p \lt \infty$  the following relativistic Sobolev spaces

$$
\mathscr{W}_c^{k,p}(\mathbb{R}^3) := \left\{ u \in L^p : \|u\|_{\mathscr{W}_c^{k,p}} := \|c^{-k} \langle \nabla \rangle_c^k u\|_{L^p} < +\infty \right\},\tag{5}
$$

$$
\mathcal{H}_c^k(\mathbb{R}^3) := \left\{ u \in L^2 : \|u\|_{\mathcal{H}_c^k} := \|c^{-k} \langle \nabla \rangle_c^k u\|_{L^2} < +\infty \right\},\tag{6}
$$

and remark that the energy space is  $\mathcal{H}_c^{1/2}$ . Remark that for finite  $c > 0$  such spaces coincide with the standard Sobolev spaces, while for  $c = \infty$  they are equivalent to the Lebesgue spaces  $L^p$ .

In the following the notation  $a \leq b$  is used to mean: there exists a positive constant *K* that does not depend on *c* such that  $a \leq Kb$ .

<span id="page-3-0"></span>We begin with a global existence result for the NLKG  $(3)$  in the cubic case,  $l = 2$ , for small initial data.

## **Theorem 1** *Consider Eq.* [\(3\)](#page-2-2) *with*  $l = 2$  *on*  $\mathbb{R}^3$ *.*

*There exist*  $\varepsilon_* > 0$  *and*  $c_* > 0$  *such that for any*  $c > c_*$ *, if the norm of the initial datum* ψ<sup>0</sup> *fulfills*

<span id="page-3-1"></span>
$$
\|\psi_0\|_{\mathcal{H}_c^{1/2}} \le \varepsilon_*,\tag{7}
$$

*then the corresponding solution*  $\psi(t)$  *of* [\(3\)](#page-2-2) *exists globally in time:* 

$$
\|\psi(t)\|_{L_t^{\infty}\mathcal{H}_c^{1/2}} \lesssim \|\psi_0\|_{\mathcal{H}_c^{1/2}}.\tag{8}
$$

We remark that the constant involved in the estimate [\(8\)](#page-3-1) does not depend on *c*.

*Remark 1* For finite *c* this is the standard result for small amplitude solution, while for  $c = \infty$  it becomes the standard result for the NLS: Thus Theorem [1](#page-3-0) interpolates between these apparently completely different situations. Remark that the lack of a priori estimates for the solutions of NLKG in the limit  $c \to \infty$  was the main obstruction in order to obtain global existence results uniform in *c* in standard Sobolev spaces.

One is now interested in discussing the approximation of the solutions of NLKG with NLS-type equations. Before giving the result we describe the general strategy we use to get them.

Remark that Eq. [\(1\)](#page-2-1) is Hamiltonian with Hamiltonian function [\(4\)](#page-2-3). If one divides the Hamiltonian by a factor  $c^2$  (which corresponds to a rescaling of time) and expands in powers of *c*−<sup>2</sup> it takes the form

$$
\langle \psi, \bar{\psi} \rangle + \frac{1}{c^2} P_c(\psi, \bar{\psi}) \tag{9}
$$

with a suitable function  $P_c$ . One can notice that this Hamiltonian is a perturbation of  $h_0 :=$  $\langle \psi, \bar{\psi} \rangle$ , which is the generator of the standard gauge transform and which in particular admits a flow that is periodic in time. Thus the idea is to exploit canonical perturbation theory in order to conjugate such a Hamiltonian system to a system in normal form, up to remainders of order  $\mathcal{O}(c^{-2r})$ , for any given  $r \geq 1$ .

The problem is that the perturbation  $P_c$  has a vector field which is small only as an operator extracting derivatives. One can Taylor expand  $P_c$  and its vector field, but the number of derivatives extracted at each order increases. This situation is typical in singular perturbation problems. Problems of this kind have already been studied with canonical perturbation theory, but the price to pay to get a normal form is that the remainder of the perturbation turns out to be an operator that extracts a large number of derivatives.

In Sect. [6](#page-18-0) the normal form equation is explicitly computed in the case  $r = 2$ :

$$
-i\psi_t = c^2\psi - \frac{1}{2}\Delta\psi + \frac{3}{4}\lambda|\psi|^2\psi
$$
  
+ 
$$
\frac{1}{c^2} \left[ \frac{51}{8}\lambda^2|\psi|^4\psi + \frac{3}{16}\lambda(2|\psi|^2\Delta\psi + \psi^2\Delta\bar{\psi} + \Delta(|\psi|^2\bar{\psi})) - \frac{1}{8}\Delta^2\psi \right], (10)
$$

namely a singular perturbation of a gauge-transformed NLS equation. If one, after a gauge transformation, only considers the first-order terms, one has the NLS, for which radiation solution exist (for example, in the defocusing case all solutions are of radiation type). For higher-order NLS there are very few results (see, for example, [\[37](#page-68-10)]).

The standard way to exploit such a "singular" normal form is to use it just to construct some approximate solution of the original system, and then to apply Gronwall lemma in order to estimate the difference with a true solution with the same initial datum (see, for example,  $[4]$  $[4]$ .

This strategy works also here, but it only leads to a control of the solutions over times of order  $\mathcal{O}(c^2)$ . When scaled back to the physical time, this allows to justify the approximation of the solutions of NLKG by solutions of the NLS over timescales of order  $\mathcal{O}(1)$ , *on any manifold* admitting a Littlewood–Paley decomposition (such as Riemannian smooth compact manifolds, or  $\mathbb{R}^d$ ; see the introduction of [\[12\]](#page-67-5) for the construction of Littlewood–Paley decomposition on manifolds).

<span id="page-4-0"></span>**Theorem 2** *Let M be a manifold which admits a Littlewood–Paley decomposition, and consider Eq.* [\(3\)](#page-2-2) *on M.*

*Fix r*  $\geq$  1*,*  $R > 0$ ,  $k_1 \gg 1$ ,  $1 < p < +\infty$ . Then  $\exists k_0 = k_0(r) > 0$  with the following *properties: For any*  $k \geq k_1$  *there exists*  $c_{l,r,k,p,R} \gg 1$  *such that for any*  $c > c_{l,r,k,p,R}$ *, if* 

<span id="page-4-2"></span>
$$
\|\psi_0\|_{k+k_0,p}\leq R
$$

*and there exists*  $T = T_{r,k,p} > 0$  *such that the solution*  $\psi_r$  *of the equation in normal form up to order r* [\(98\)](#page-24-1) *with the initial datum*  $ψ<sub>0</sub>$  *satisfies* 

$$
\|\psi_r(t)\|_{k+k_0,p}\leq 2R,\ \ \text{for}\ \ 0\leq t\leq T,
$$

*then*

$$
\|\psi(t) - \psi_r(t)\|_{k, p} \lesssim \frac{1}{c^2}, \text{ for } 0 \le t \le T. \tag{11}
$$

*where*  $\psi(t)$  *is the solution of* [\(3\)](#page-2-2) *with the initial datum*  $\psi_0$ *.* 

A similar result has been obtained for the case  $M = \mathbb{T}^d$  by Faou and Schratz, who aimed to construct numerical schemes which are robust in the nonrelativistic limit (see [\[23](#page-68-11)]; see also [\[7](#page-67-6)[,8\]](#page-67-7) and to [\[9\]](#page-67-8) for the numerical analysis of the nonrelativistic limit of the NLKG).

The idea one uses here in order to improve the timescale of the result is that of substituting Gronwall lemma with a more sophisticated tool, namely dispersive estimates and the retarded Strichartz estimate. This can be done, provided one can prove a dispersive or a Strichartz estimate for the linearization of Eq. [\(3\)](#page-2-2) on the approximate solution, uniformly in *c*.

In order to state our approximation result for the linear case, we consider the approximate equation given by the Hamilton equations of the normal form truncated at order  $\mathcal{O}(c^{-2r})$ , and let  $\psi_r$  be a solution of such a linearized normal form equation.

<span id="page-4-1"></span>**Theorem 3** *Fix r*  $\geq 1$  *and*  $k_1 \gg 1$ *. Then*  $\exists k_0 = k_0(r) > 0$  *such that for any*  $k \geq k_1$ *, if we denote by* ψ*<sup>r</sup> the solution of the linearized normal equation* [\(105\)](#page-26-1) *with the initial datum*

 $\psi_0 \in H^{k+k_0}$  *and by*  $\psi$  *the solution of the linear KG equation* [\(12\)](#page-6-1) *with the same initial datum, then there exists*  $c^* := c^*(r, k) > 0$  *such that for any*  $c > c^*$ 

$$
\sup_{t\in[0,T]}\|\psi(t)-\psi_r(t)\|_{H^k_x}\lesssim \frac{1}{c^2},\quad T\lesssim c^{2(r-1)}.
$$

This result has been proved in the case  $r = 1$  in Appendix A of [\[14\]](#page-68-12).

<span id="page-5-0"></span>Next we consider the approximation of small radiation solutions of the NLKG equation.

**Theorem 4** *Consider* [\(3\)](#page-2-2) *on*  $\mathbb{R}^d$ *, d*  $\geq$  2*. Let r*  $> 1$ *, and fix k*<sub>1</sub>  $\gg$  1*. Assume that l*  $\geq$  2*. and*  $r < \frac{d}{2}(l - 1)$ *. Then*  $\exists k_0 = k_0(r) > 0$  *such that for any*  $k \geq k_1$  *and for any*  $\sigma > 0$ *the following holds: Consider the solution*  $\psi_r$  *of the normalized equation* [\(98\)](#page-24-1)*, with the initial datum*  $\psi_{r,0} \in H^{k+k_0+\sigma+d/2}$ *. Then there exist*  $\alpha^* := \alpha^*(d,l,r) > 0$  *and there exists*  $c^* := c^*(r, k) > 1$ , such that for any  $\alpha > \alpha^*$  and for any  $c > c^*$ , if  $\psi_{r,0}$  satisfies

$$
\|\psi_{r,0}\|_{H^{k+k_0+\sigma+d/2}}\lesssim c^{-\alpha},
$$

*then*

$$
\sup_{t\in[0,T]}\|\psi(t)-\psi_r(t)\|_{H^k_x}\lesssim \frac{1}{c^2},\quad T\lesssim c^{2(r-1)},
$$

*where*  $\psi(t)$  *is the solution of* [\(3\)](#page-2-2) *with the initial datum*  $\psi_{r,0}$ *.* 

*Remark 2* The assumption of existence of  $\psi_r$  up to times of order  $\mathcal{O}(c^{2(r-1)})$  is actually a delicate matter. Equation [\(10\)](#page-4-2), for example, is a quasilinear perturbation of a fourth-order Schrödinger equation (4NLS). Even if we restrict to the case  $r = 2$ , the issues of global wellposedness and scattering for solutions with large initial data for Eq. [\(10\)](#page-4-2) have not been solved. For solutions with small initial data, on the other hand, there are some papers dealing with the local well-posedness of 4NLS (see, for example, [\[28\]](#page-68-13)) and with global well-posedness and scattering of 4NLS (see [\[50\]](#page-69-6)). In Sec. [8.2](#page-27-0) we prove the local well-posedness for times of order  $\mathcal{O}(c^{2(r-1)})$  for solutions of the order-*r* normalized equation with small initial data under the assumptions that  $l \geq 2$  and  $r < \frac{d}{2}(l - 1)$ .

*Remark 3* Just to be explicit, we make some examples of Theorem [4.](#page-5-0) For  $M = \mathbb{R}^2$  and a nonlinearity of order 2*l*, we can justify the approximation of small radiation solutions up to times of order  $\mathcal{O}(c^{2(r-1)})$ , for  $r < l - 1$ . For  $M = \mathbb{R}^3$  and a nonlinearity of order 2*l*, we can justify the approximation of small radiation solutions up to times of order  $\mathcal{O}(c^{2(r-1)})$ , for  $r < \frac{3}{2}(l-1)$ .

There are some equations, namely the ones in which  $\frac{d}{2}(l-1) \leq 2$ , in which we cannot justify the approximation over long timescales (we mention, for example, the cubic NLKG in 2, 3 and 4 dimensions, or the quintic NLKG in 2 dimensions).

There are other well-known solutions of NLS which would be interesting to study; indeed, it is well known that in the case of mixed-type nonlinearity

$$
i\psi_t = -\Delta\psi - \left(|\psi|^2 - |\psi|^4\right)\psi,
$$

such an equation admits linearly stable solitary wave solutions; it can also be proved that the standing waves of NLS can be modified in order to obtain standing wave solutions of the normal form of order *r*, for any *r*. It would be of clear interest to prove that true solutions starting close to such standing wave remain close to them for long times (remark that the NLKG does not admit stable standing wave solutions, see [\[45](#page-69-7)]); in order to get such a result, one should prove a Strichartz estimate for NLKG close to the approximate solution and uniformly in *c*.

Before closing the subsection, a few technical comments are as follows: The first one is that here we develop normal form in the framework of the spaces  $W^{k,p}$ , while known results in Galerkin averaging theory only allow to deal with the spaces  $H^k$ . This is due to the fact that the Fourier analysis is used in order to approximate the derivatives operators with bounded operators. Thus the first technical step needed in order to be able to exploit dispersion is to reformulate Galerkin averaging theory in terms of dyadic decompositions. This is done in Theorem [7.](#page-12-0)

Second, the condition on *r* in Theorem [4](#page-5-0) depends on the assumption in which we were able to prove a well-posedness result for the normalized equation, which in turn depends on the approach presented recently in [\[50\]](#page-69-6); we do not exclude that this technical condition could be improved.

# <span id="page-6-0"></span>**3 Dispersive properties of the Klein–Gordon equation**

We briefly recall some classical notion of Fourier analysis on  $\mathbb{R}^d$ . Recall the definition of the space of Schwartz (or rapidly decreasing) functions,

$$
\mathscr{S} := \left\{ f \in C^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}^d, \mathbb{R}) \, \Big| \, \sup_{x \in \mathbb{R}^d} (1+|x|^2)^{\alpha/2} |\partial^{\beta} f(x)| < +\infty, \quad \forall \alpha \in \mathbb{N}^d, \forall \beta \in \mathbb{N}^d \right\}.
$$

In the following  $\langle x \rangle := (1 + |x|^2)^{1/2}$ .

Now, for any  $f \in \mathcal{S}$  the *Fourier transform* of  $f, \hat{f} : \mathbb{R}^d \to \mathbb{R}$ , is defined by the following formula

$$
\hat{f}(\xi) := (2\pi)^{-d/2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} f(x) e^{-i\langle x, \xi \rangle} \mathrm{d}x, \quad \forall \xi \in \mathbb{R}^d,
$$

where  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$  denotes the scalar product in  $\mathbb{R}^d$ .

At the beginning we obtain Strichartz estimates for the linear equation

<span id="page-6-1"></span>
$$
-i \psi_t = c \langle \nabla \rangle_c \psi, \quad x \in \mathbb{R}^d. \tag{12}
$$

<span id="page-6-4"></span>**Proposition 1** *Let*  $d \geq 2$ *. For any Schrödinger-admissible couples*  $(p, q)$  *and*  $(r, s)$ *, namely such that*

$$
2 \le p, r \le \infty,
$$
  
\n
$$
2 \le q, s \le \frac{2d}{d-2},
$$
  
\n
$$
\frac{2}{p} + \frac{d}{q} = \frac{d}{2}, \frac{2}{r} + \frac{d}{s} = \frac{d}{2},
$$
  
\n
$$
(p, q, d), (r, s, d) \ne (2, +\infty, 2),
$$

*one has*

$$
\left\| \langle \nabla \rangle_c^{\frac{1}{q} - \frac{1}{p}} e^{it \ c \langle \nabla \rangle_c} \ \psi_0 \right\|_{L^p_t L^q_x} \lesssim \ c^{\frac{1}{q} - \frac{1}{p} - \frac{1}{2}} \ \|\langle \nabla \rangle_c^{1/2} \psi_0\|_{L^2}, \tag{13}
$$

$$
\left\| \langle \nabla \rangle_c^{\frac{1}{q} - \frac{1}{p}} \int_0^t e^{i(t-s) c \langle \nabla \rangle_c} F(s) ds \right\|_{L_t^p L_x^q} \lesssim c^{\frac{1}{q} - \frac{1}{p} + \frac{1}{s} - \frac{1}{r} - 1} \left\| \langle \nabla \rangle_c^{\frac{1}{r} - \frac{1}{s} + 1} F \right\|_{L_t^{r'} L_x^{s'}}.
$$
 (14)

<span id="page-6-3"></span><span id="page-6-2"></span> $\circled{2}$  Springer

*Remark 4* By choosing  $p = +\infty$  and  $q = 2$ , we get the following a priori estimate for finite energy solutions of [\(12\)](#page-6-1),

$$
\left\|c^{1/2}\langle\nabla\rangle_c^{1/2} e^{it\;c\langle\nabla\rangle_c}\;\psi_0\right\|_{L^{\infty}_t L^2_x}\;\lesssim\; \left\|c^{1/2}\langle\nabla\rangle_c^{1/2}\psi_0\right\|_{L^2}.
$$

We also point out that, since the operators  $\langle \nabla \rangle$  and  $\langle \nabla \rangle_c$  commute, the above estimates in the spaces  $L_t^p L_x^q$  extend to estimates in  $L_t^p W_x^{k,q}$  for any  $k \ge 0$ .

*Proof* We recall a result reported by D'Ancona–Fanelli in [\[21\]](#page-68-14) for the operator  $\langle \nabla \rangle := \langle \nabla \rangle_1$ .

**Lemma 1** *For all* (*p*, *q*) *Schrödinger-admissible exponents*

$$
\|e^{i\tau\langle\nabla\rangle}\phi_0\|_{L^p_t W_y^{\frac{1}{q}-\frac{1}{p}-\frac{1}{2},q}=\|\langle\nabla\rangle^{\frac{1}{q}-\frac{1}{p}-\frac{1}{2}}e^{it\langle\nabla\rangle}\phi_0\|_{L^p_t L^q_y}\leq \|\phi_0\|_{L^2_y}.
$$

Now, the solution of Eq. [\(12\)](#page-6-1) satisfies  $\hat{\psi}(t,\xi) = e^{i c \langle \xi \rangle_c t} \hat{\psi}_0(\xi)$ . We then define  $\eta := \xi/c$ , in order to have that

$$
\hat{\phi}(c^2t,\eta) := \hat{\psi}(t,c\eta) = \hat{\psi}(t,\xi),
$$

and in particular that  $\hat{\phi}_0(\eta) = \hat{\psi}_0(\xi)$ . Since

$$
\langle \xi \rangle_c = \sqrt{c^2 + |\xi|^2} = c\sqrt{1 + |\xi|^2/c^2},\tag{15}
$$

we get

$$
\hat{\phi}(t,\eta) = e^{it c^2 \langle \xi/c \rangle} \hat{\phi}_0(\xi/c)
$$

$$
= e^{i t c^2 \langle \eta \rangle} \hat{\phi}_0(\eta)
$$

$$
= e^{i \tau \langle \eta \rangle} \hat{\phi}_0(\eta)
$$

if we set  $\tau := c^2t$ . Now, by setting  $y := cx$  a simple scaling argument leads to

$$
\|e^{i\tau\langle\nabla\rangle}\phi_0\|_{L^p_\tau L^q_y} \lesssim \left\|\langle\nabla\rangle^{\frac{1}{p}-\frac{1}{q}+\frac{1}{2}}\phi_0\right\|_{L^2} = \left\|\langle\eta\rangle^{\frac{1}{p}-\frac{1}{q}+\frac{1}{2}}\hat{\phi}_0\right\|_{L^2}
$$

and since

$$
\begin{split} \|\langle \eta \rangle^{k} \hat{\phi}_{0} \|_{L^{2}}^{2} &= \int_{\mathbb{R}^{d}} \langle \eta \rangle^{2k} \ |\hat{\phi}_{0}(\eta)|^{2} \ \mathrm{d}\eta \\ &= \int_{\mathbb{R}^{d}} \left\langle \frac{\xi}{c} \right\rangle^{2k} \ |\hat{\phi}_{0}(\eta/c)|^{2} \ \frac{\mathrm{d}\xi}{c^{d}} = \frac{1}{c^{2k+d}} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{d}} \langle \xi \rangle^{2k} \ |\hat{\psi}_{0}(\xi)|^{2} \ \mathrm{d}\xi, \end{split}
$$

we get

$$
\|\langle \eta \rangle^{\frac{1}{p}-\frac{1}{q}+\frac{1}{2}} \hat{\phi}_0 \|_{L^2} = \frac{1}{c^{\frac{d}{2}-\frac{1}{q}+\frac{1}{p}+\frac{1}{2}}} \left\| \langle \nabla \rangle_c^{\frac{1}{p}-\frac{1}{q}+\frac{1}{2}} \psi_0 \right\|_{L^2}, \tag{16}
$$

while on the other hand

$$
\psi(t,x) = (2\pi)^{-d/2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} e^{i \langle \xi, x \rangle} \hat{\psi}(t, \xi) d\xi = (2\pi)^{-d/2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} e^{i \langle \eta, cx \rangle} \hat{\psi}(t, c\eta) c^d d\eta
$$

$$
= (2\pi)^{-d/2} c^d \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} e^{i \langle \eta, cx \rangle} \hat{\phi}(c^2t, \eta) d\eta = c^d \phi(c^2t, cx),
$$

 $\bigcirc$  Springer

yields

$$
\|\psi\|_{L_t^p L_x^q} = c^{d-d/q-2/p} \|\phi\|_{L_t^p L_y^q}.\tag{17}
$$

Hence we can deduce [\(13\)](#page-6-2); via a scaling argument, we can also deduce [\(14\)](#page-6-3).  $\Box$ 

One important application of the Strichartz estimates for the free Klein–Gordon equation is Theorem [1,](#page-3-0) namely a global existence result *uniform with respect to c* for the NLKG equation [\(3\)](#page-2-2) on  $\mathbb{R}^3$  with cubic nonlinearity (*l* = 2), for small initial data.

*Proof (Theorem [1\)](#page-3-0)* It just suffices to apply Duhamel formula,

$$
\psi(t) = e^{itc\nabla_c}\psi_0 + i\frac{\lambda}{2^2} \int_0^t e^{i(t-s)c\nabla_c} \left(\frac{c}{\langle \nabla \rangle_c}\right)^{1/2} \left[ \left(\frac{c}{\langle \nabla \rangle_c}\right)^{1/2} (\psi + \bar{\psi}) \right]^3,
$$

and Proposition [1](#page-6-4) with  $p = +\infty$  and  $q = 2$ , in order to get that

$$
\|\psi(t)\|_{L_t^{\infty} \mathcal{H}_c^{1/2}} \lesssim \|\psi_0\|_{\mathcal{H}_c^{1/2}} + c^{1/s - 1/r} \left\| \nabla_c^{1/r - 1/s} \left[ \left( \frac{c}{\langle \nabla \rangle_c} \right)^{1/2} (\psi + \bar{\psi}) \right]^3 \right\|_{L_t^{r'} L_x^{s'}}
$$

but by choosing  $r = +\infty$  and by exploiting Hölder inequality and Sobolev embedding we get

$$
\begin{split} \|\psi(t)\|_{L^{\infty}_{l},\mathscr{H}_{c}^{1/2}} &\lesssim \|\psi_{0}\|_{\mathscr{H}_{c}^{1/2}} + \left\|\left[\left(\frac{c}{\langle\nabla\rangle_{c}}\right)^{1/2}(\psi+\bar{\psi})\right]^{3}\right\|_{L^{1}_{l}L^{2}_{x}} \\ &\lesssim \|\psi_{0}\|_{\mathscr{H}_{c}^{1/2}} + \left\|\left[\left(\frac{c}{\langle\nabla\rangle_{c}}\right)^{1/2}(\psi+\bar{\psi})\right]^{2}\right\|_{L^{1}_{l}L^{2}_{x}} \left\|\left(\frac{c}{\langle\nabla\rangle_{c}}\right)^{1/2}(\psi+\bar{\psi})\right\|_{L^{2}_{l}L^{2}_{x}} \\ &\lesssim \|\psi_{0}\|_{\mathscr{H}_{c}^{1/2}} + \left\|\left(\frac{c}{\langle\nabla\rangle_{c}}\right)^{1/2}(\psi+\bar{\psi})\right\|_{L^{2}_{l}L^{2}_{x}}^{2} \left\|\left(\frac{c}{\langle\nabla\rangle_{c}}\right)^{1/2}(\psi+\bar{\psi})\right\|_{L^{\infty}_{l}L^{6}_{x}} \\ &\lesssim \|\psi_{0}\|_{\mathscr{H}_{c}^{1/2}} + \|\psi\|_{L^{2}_{l}\mathscr{W}_{c}^{-1/2,6}}^{2} \|\psi\|_{L^{\infty}_{l}\mathscr{W}_{c}^{-1/2,6}} \\ &\lesssim \|\psi_{0}\|_{\mathscr{H}_{c}^{1/2}} + \|\psi\|_{L^{2}_{l}\mathscr{W}_{c}^{-1/3,6}}^{2} \|\psi\|_{L^{\infty}_{l} \mathscr{H}_{c}^{1/2}}, \end{split}
$$

and one can conclude by a standard continuation argument.

We also give a formulation of the Kato–Ponce inequality for the relativistic Sobolev spaces.

**Proposition 2** *Let*  $f, g \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^d)$ *, and let*  $c > 0$ *,*  $1 < r < \infty$  *and*  $k \ge 0$ *. Then* 

$$
\|f\ g\|_{\mathscr{W}_c^{k,r}} \lesssim \|f\|_{\mathscr{W}_c^{k,r_1}} \|g\|_{L^{r_2}} + \|f\|_{L^{r_3}} \|g\|_{\mathscr{W}_c^{k,r_4}},\tag{18}
$$

*with*

<span id="page-8-0"></span>
$$
\frac{1}{r} = \frac{1}{r_1} + \frac{1}{r_2} = \frac{1}{r_3} + \frac{1}{r_4}, \quad 1 < r_1, r_4 < +\infty.
$$

*Remark 5* For  $c = 1$  Eq. [\(18\)](#page-8-0) reduces to the classical Kato–Ponce inequality.

,

*Proof* We follow an argument by Cordero and Zucco (see Theorem 2.3 in [\[19\]](#page-68-15)).

We introduce the dilation operator  $S_c(f)(x) := f(x/c)$ , for any  $c > 0$ .

Then we apply the classical Kato–Ponce inequality to the rescaled product  $S_c(fg)$  =  $S_c(f) S_c(g)$ ,

$$
\|S_c(fg)\|_{W^{k,r}} \lesssim \|S_c(f)\|_{W^{k,r_1}} \|S_c(g)\|_{L^{r_2}} + \|S_c(f)\|_{L^{r_3}} \|S_c(g)\|_{W^{k,r_4}},\tag{19}
$$

where

$$
\frac{1}{r} = \frac{1}{r_1} + \frac{1}{r_2} = \frac{1}{r_3} + \frac{1}{r_4}, \quad 1 < r_1, r_4 < +\infty.
$$

Now, combining the commutativity property

<span id="page-9-0"></span>
$$
\langle \nabla \rangle^k S_c(f)(x) = c^{-k} S_c(\langle \nabla \rangle_c^k f)(x),
$$

with the equality  $||S_c(f)||_{L^r} = c^{-d/r} ||f||_{L^r}$ , we can rewrite [\(19\)](#page-9-0) as

$$
\|\langle \nabla \rangle^{k} (f g)\|_{L^{r}} \lesssim \|\langle \nabla \rangle^{k} f\|_{L^{r_{1}}} \|g\|_{L^{r_{2}}} + \|f\|_{L^{r_{3}}} \|\langle \nabla \rangle^{k} g\|_{L^{r_{4}}},
$$

and this leads to the thesis.

We conclude with another dispersive result, which could be interesting in itself: by exploiting the boundedness of the wave operators for the Schrödinger equation, we can deduce Strichartz estimates for the KG equation with potential.

<span id="page-9-1"></span>**Theorem 5** *Let*  $c > 1$ *, and consider the operator* 

$$
\mathcal{H}(x) := c \left( c^2 - \Delta + V(x) \right)^{1/2} = \mathcal{H}_0 \left( 1 + \langle \nabla \rangle_c^{-2} V \right)^{1/2},\tag{20}
$$

*where*  $V \in C(\mathbb{R}^3, \mathbb{R})$  *is a potential such that* 

<span id="page-9-2"></span>
$$
|V(x)| + |\nabla V(x)| \lesssim \langle x \rangle^{-\beta}, \quad x \in \mathbb{R}^3,
$$

*for some* β > 5*, and that 0 is neither an eigenvalue nor a resonance for the operator*  $-\Delta+V(x)$ . Let  $(p, q)$  be a Schrödinger-admissible couple, and assume that  $\psi_0 \in (\nabla)^{-1/2}_c L^2$ *is orthogonal to the bound states of*  $-\Delta + V(x)$ *. Then* 

$$
\|\langle \nabla \rangle_c^{\frac{1}{q}-\frac{1}{p}} e^{it\mathcal{H}(x)} \psi_0\|_{L^p_t L^q_x} \lesssim c^{\frac{1}{q}-\frac{1}{p}-\frac{1}{2}} \|\langle \nabla \rangle_c^{1/2} \psi_0\|_{L^2}.
$$
 (21)

<span id="page-9-3"></span>In order to prove Theorem [5](#page-9-1) we recall Yajima's result on wave operators [\[60\]](#page-69-8) (where we denote by  $P_c(-\Delta + V)$  the projection onto the continuous spectrum of the operator  $-\Delta + V$ ).

#### **Theorem 6** *Assume that*

 $-$  0 is neither an eigenvalue nor a resonance for  $−\Delta$  + V;  $|\partial^{\alpha} V(x)| \lesssim \langle x \rangle^{-\beta}$  for  $|\alpha| \leq k$ , for some  $\beta > 5$ .

*Consider the strong limits*

$$
\mathscr{W}_{\pm} := \lim_{t \to \pm \infty} e^{it(-\Delta + V)} e^{it\Delta}, \quad \mathscr{Z}_{\pm} := \lim_{t \to \pm \infty} e^{-it\Delta} e^{it(\Delta - V)} P_c(-\Delta + V).
$$

*Then*  $\mathcal{W}_\pm : L^2 \to P_c(-\Delta + V)L^2$  *are isomorphic isometries which extend into isomorphisms W*<sup>±</sup> :  $W$ <sup>*k*</sup>,*p* → *P<sub>c</sub>*(−*∆* + *V*) $W$ <sup>*k*</sup>,*p for all p* ∈ [1, +∞]*, with inverses*  $\mathscr{L}_\pm$ *. Furthermore, for any Borel function f* (·) *we have*

$$
f(-\Delta + V)P_c(-\Delta + V) = \mathscr{W}_{\pm}f(-\Delta)\mathscr{Z}_{\pm}, \ f(-\Delta) = \mathscr{Z}_{\pm}f(-\Delta + V)P_c(-\Delta + V)\mathscr{W}_{\pm}.
$$
\n(22)

 $\circledcirc$  Springer

Now, in the case  $c = 1$  one can derive Strichartz estimates for  $\mathcal{H}(x)$  from the Strichartz estimates for the free KG equation, just by applying the aforementioned theorem by Yajima in the case  $k = 1$  (since  $1/p - 1/q + 1/2 \in [0, 5/6]$  for all Schrödinger-admissible couples  $(p, q)$ ). This was already proved in [\[5](#page-67-9)] (see Lemma 6.3). In the general case, this follows from an interpolation theory argument, and we defer it to Appendix B.

# <span id="page-10-0"></span>**4 Galerkin averaging method**

Consider the scale of Banach spaces  $W^{k,p}(M, \mathbb{C}^n \times \mathbb{C}^n) \ni (\psi, \bar{\psi})$  ( $k \geq 1, 1 < p < +\infty$ , *n* ∈  $\mathbb{N}_0$ ) endowed by the standard symplectic form. Having fixed *k* and *p*, and *U<sub>k</sub>*, *p* ⊂ *W*<sup>*k*,*p*</sup> open, we define the gradient of  $H \in C^{\infty}(U_{k,p}, \mathbb{R})$  w.r.t.  $\bar{\psi}$  as the unique function s.t.

$$
\left\langle \nabla_{\bar{\psi}} H, \bar{h} \right\rangle = \mathrm{d}_{\bar{\psi}} H \bar{h}, \quad \forall h \in W^{k, p},
$$

so that the Hamiltonian vector field of a Hamiltonian function H is given by

$$
X_H(\psi, \bar{\psi}) = \left( i \nabla_{\bar{\psi}} H, -i \nabla_{\psi} H \right).
$$

The open ball of radius *R* and center 0 in  $W^{k,p}$  will be denoted by  $B_{k,p}(R)$ .

Now, we call an *admissible family of cutoff (pseudo-differential) operators* a sequence  $(\pi_j(D))_{j>0}$ , where  $\pi_j(D) : W^{k,p} \to W^{k,p}$  for any  $j \ge 0$ , such that

– for any *<sup>j</sup>* <sup>≥</sup> 0 and for any *<sup>f</sup>* <sup>∈</sup> *<sup>W</sup>k*,*<sup>p</sup>*

$$
f = \sum_{j\geq 0} \pi_j(D)f;
$$

– for any  $j \ge 0$   $\pi_j(D)$  can be extended to a self-adjoint operator on  $L^2$ , and there exist constants  $K_1, K_2 > 0$  such that

$$
K_1\left(\sum_{j\geq 0} \|\pi_j(D)f\|_{L^2}^2\right)^{1/2} \leq \|f\|_{L^2} \leq K_2\left(\sum_{j\geq 0} \|\pi_j(D)f\|_{L^2}^2\right)^{1/2};
$$

 $f(x) = \int_{0}^{x}$  for any  $j \ge 0$ , if we denote by  $\Pi_j(D) := \sum_{l=0}^{j} \pi_l(D)$ , there exist positive constants *K*<sup>*l*</sup> (possibly depending on *k* and *p*) such that

$$
||\Pi_j f||_{k,p} \leq K' ||f||_{k,p} \quad \forall f \in W^{k,p};
$$

 $-$  there exist positive constants  $K''_1, K''_2$  (possibly depending on *k* and *p*) and an increasing and unbounded sequence  $(K_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}} \subset \mathbb{R}_+$  such that

<span id="page-10-1"></span>
$$
K_1'' \| f \|_{W^{k,p}} \le \left\| \left[ \sum_{j \in \mathbb{N}} K_j^{2k} |\pi_j(D)f|^2 \right]^{1/2} \right\|_{L^p} \le K_2'' \| f \|_{W^{k,p}}.
$$
 (23)

*Remark 6* Let  $k > 0$ , M be either  $\mathbb{R}^d$  or the d-dimensional torus  $\mathbb{T}^d$ , and consider the Sobolev space  $H^k = H^k(M)$ . One can readily check that Fourier projection operators on  $H^k$ 

$$
\pi_j \psi(x) := (2\pi)^{-d/2} \int_{j-1 \le |k| \le j} \hat{\psi}(k) e^{ik \cdot x} dk, \quad j \ge 1
$$

 $\circled{2}$  Springer

form an admissible family of cutoff operators. In this case we have

$$
\Pi_N \psi(x) := (2\pi)^{-d/2} \int_{|k| \le N} \hat{\psi}(k) e^{ik \cdot x} dk, \quad N \ge 0,
$$

and the constants  $(K_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$  in [\(23\)](#page-10-1) are given by  $K_i := j$ .

<span id="page-11-2"></span>*Remark 7* Let  $k \geq 0, 1 < p < +\infty$ ; we now introduce the Littlewood–Paley decomposition on the Sobolev space  $W^{k,p} = W^{k,p}(\mathbb{R}^d)$  (see [\[56](#page-69-9)], Ch. 13.5).

In order to do this, define the cutoff operators in  $W^{k,p}$  in the following way: Start with a smooth, radial nonnegative function  $\phi_0 : \mathbb{R}^d \to \mathbb{R}$  such that  $\phi_0(\xi) = 1$  for  $|\xi| \le 1/2$ , and  $\phi_0(\xi) = 0$  for  $|\xi| \geq 1$ ; then, define  $\phi_1(\xi) := \phi_0(\xi/2) - \phi_0(\xi)$ , and set

$$
\phi_j(\xi) := \phi_1(2^{1-j}\xi), \quad j \ge 2. \tag{24}
$$

Then  $(\phi_i)_{i>0}$  is a partition of unity,

<span id="page-11-3"></span>
$$
\sum_{j\geq 0}\phi_j(\xi)=1.
$$

Now, for each  $j \in \mathbb{N}$  and each  $f \in W^{k,2}$ , we can define  $\phi_j(D)f$  by

$$
\mathscr{F}(\phi_j(D)f)(\xi) := \phi_j(\xi)\hat{f}(\xi).
$$

It is well known that for  $p \in (1, +\infty)$  the map  $\Phi: L^p(\mathbb{R}^d) \to L^p(\mathbb{R}^d, l^2)$ ,

$$
\Phi(f) := (\phi_j(D)f)_{j \in \mathbb{N}},
$$

maps  $L^p(\mathbb{R}^d)$  isomorphically onto a closed subspace of  $L^p(\mathbb{R}^d, l^2)$ , and we have compatibility of norms  $(56)$ , Ch. 13.5,  $(5.45)$ – $(5.46)$ ),

$$
K'_{p} \|f\|_{L^{p}} \leq \|\Phi(f)\|_{L^{p}(\mathbb{R}^{d},l^{2})} := \left\|\left[\sum_{j\in\mathbb{N}}|\phi_{j}(D)f|^{2}\right]^{1/2}\right\|_{L^{p}} \leq K_{p} \|f\|_{L^{p}},
$$

and similarly for the  $W^{k,p}$ -norm, i.e., for any  $k > 0$  and  $p \in (1, +\infty)$ 

$$
K'_{k,p} \|f\|_{W^{k,p}} \le \left\| \left[ \sum_{j \in \mathbb{N}} 2^{2jk} |\phi_j(D)f|^2 \right]^{1/2} \right\|_{L^p} \le K_{k,p} \|f\|_{W^{k,p}}.
$$
 (25)

We then define the cutoff operator  $\Pi_N$  by

<span id="page-11-0"></span>
$$
\Pi_N \psi := \sum_{j \le N} \phi_j(D)\psi.
$$
 (26)

Hence, according to the above definition, the sequence  $(\phi_i(D))_{i>0}$  is an admissible family of cutoff operators.

We point out that the Littlewood–Paley decomposition, along with equality [\(25\)](#page-11-0), can be extended to compact manifolds (see [\[13](#page-68-16)]), as well as to some particular noncompact manifolds (see [\[12](#page-67-5)]).

Now we consider a Hamiltonian system of the form

<span id="page-11-1"></span>
$$
H = h_0 + \varepsilon h + \varepsilon F,\tag{27}
$$

where  $\varepsilon > 0$  is a parameter. We fix an admissible family of cutoff operators  $(\pi_i(D))_{i>0}$  on  $W^{k,p}(\mathbb{R}^d)$ . We assume that

PER  $h_0$  generates a linear periodic flow  $\Phi^t$  with period  $2\pi$ ,

$$
\Phi^{t+2\pi} = \Phi^t \quad \forall t.
$$

We also assume that  $\Phi^t$  is analytic from  $W^{k,p}$  to itself for any  $k \geq 1$ , and for any  $p \in (1, +\infty);$ 

INV for any  $k \ge 1$ , for any  $p \in (1, +\infty)$ ,  $\Phi^t$  leaves invariant the space  $\Pi_i W^{k, p}$  for any  $j \geq 0$ . Furthermore, for any  $j \geq 0$ 

$$
\pi_j(D) \circ \Phi^t = \Phi^t \circ \pi_j(D);
$$

NF *h* is in normal form, namely

$$
h\circ\Phi^t=h.
$$

Next we assume that both the Hamiltonian and the vector field of both *h* and *F* admit an asymptotic expansion in  $\varepsilon$  of the form

$$
h \sim \sum_{j\geq 1} \varepsilon^{j-1} h_j, \quad F \sim \sum_{j\geq 1} \varepsilon^{j-1} F_j,\tag{28}
$$

$$
X_h \sim \sum_{j\geq 1} \varepsilon^{j-1} X_{h_j}, \quad X_F \sim \sum_{j\geq 1} \varepsilon^{j-1} X_{F_j},\tag{29}
$$

and that the following properties are satisfied

HVF There exists  $R^* > 0$  such that for any  $j \ge 1$ 

- $X_{h_i}$  is analytic from  $B_{k+2j, p}(R^*)$  to  $W^{k, p}$ ;
- $\bullet$  *X<sub>Fj</sub>* is analytic from *B<sub>k+2(j−1),p*(*R*<sup>\*</sup>) to *W*<sup>*k*,*p*</sup>.</sub>

Moreover, for any  $r \geq 1$  we have that

- $\bullet$  *X*<sub>*h*− $\sum_{j=1}^{r} \varepsilon^{j-1} h_j$  is analytic from *B<sub>k+2(r+1), p*(*R*<sup>∗</sup>) to *W*<sup>*k*, *p*</sup>;</sub></sub>
- $X_{F-\sum_{j=1}^{r} \varepsilon^{j-1} F_j}$  is analytic from  $B_{k+2r,p}(R^*)$  to  $W^{k,p}$ .

<span id="page-12-0"></span>The main result of this section is the following theorem.

**Theorem 7** *Fix r*  $\geq$  1*,*  $R$   $>$  0*, k*<sub>1</sub>  $\gg$  1*,* 1 < *p* < + $\infty$ *. Consider* (27*), and assume PER, INV (with respect to the Littlewood–Paley decomposition), NF and HVF. Then*  $\exists k_0 = k_0(r) > 0$ *with the following properties: For any*  $k \geq k_1$  *<i>there exists*  $\varepsilon_{r,k,p} \ll 1$  *such that for any*  $\varepsilon < \varepsilon_{r,k,p}$  there exists  $\mathcal{T}_{\varepsilon}^{(r)}$ :  $B_{k,p}(R) \to B_{k,p}(2R)$  analytic canonical transformation such *that*

$$
H_r := H \circ \mathcal{T}_{\varepsilon}^{(r)} = h_0 + \sum_{j=1}^r \varepsilon^j \mathcal{Z}_j + \varepsilon^{r+1} \mathcal{R}^{(r)},
$$

*where Z<sup>j</sup> are in normal form, namely*

$$
\{\mathcal{Z}_j, h_0\} = 0,\tag{30}
$$

*and*

<span id="page-13-4"></span><span id="page-13-3"></span>
$$
\sup_{B_{k+k_0,p}(R)} \|X_{\mathscr{Z}_j}\|_{W^{k,p}} \leq C_{k,p},
$$
  
\n
$$
\sup_{B_{k+k_0,p}(R)} \|X_{\mathscr{R}^{(r)}}\|_{W^{k,p}} \leq C_{k,p},
$$
\n(31)

$$
\sup_{B_{k,p}(R)} \|\mathcal{T}_{\varepsilon}^{(r)} - id\|_{W^{k,p}} \le C_{k,p} \,\varepsilon. \tag{32}
$$

*In particular, we have that*

$$
\mathscr{Z}_1(\psi, \bar{\psi}) = h_1(\psi, \bar{\psi}) + \langle F_1 \rangle (\psi, \bar{\psi}),
$$

*where*  $\langle F_1 \rangle$   $(\psi, \bar{\psi}) := \int_0^{2\pi} F_1 \circ \Phi^t(\psi, \bar{\psi}) \frac{dt}{2\pi}$ .

# <span id="page-13-0"></span>**5 Proof of Theorem [7](#page-12-0)**

We first make a Galerkin cutoff through the Littlewood–Paley decomposition (see [\[56\]](#page-69-9), Ch. 13.5).

In order to do this, fix  $N \in \mathbb{N}$ ,  $N \gg 1$ , and introduce the cutoff operators  $\Pi_N$  in  $W^{k,p}$  by

<span id="page-13-1"></span>
$$
\Pi_N \psi := \sum_{j \leq N} \phi_j(D) \psi,
$$

where  $\phi_i(D)$  are the operators we introduced in Remark [7.](#page-11-2)

We notice that by assumption INV the Hamiltonian vector field of  $h_0$  generates a continuous flow  $\Phi^t$  which leaves  $\Pi_N W^{k,p}$  invariant.

Now we set  $H = H_{N,r} + \mathcal{R}_{N,r} + \mathcal{R}_r$ , where

$$
H_{N,r} := h_0 + \varepsilon h_{N,r} + \varepsilon F_{N,r},\tag{33}
$$

$$
h_{N,r} := \sum_{j=1}^{r} \varepsilon^{j-1} h_{j,N}, \quad h_{j,N} := h_j \circ \Pi_N,
$$
 (34)

$$
F_{N,r} := \sum_{j=1}^{r} \varepsilon^{j-1} F_{j,N}, \quad F_{j,N} := F_j \circ \Pi_N,
$$
 (35)

and

$$
\mathscr{R}_{N,r} := h_0 + \sum_{j=1}^r \varepsilon^j h_j + \sum_{j=1}^r \varepsilon^j F_j - H_{N,r},
$$
\n(36)

$$
\mathcal{R}_r := \varepsilon \left( h - \sum_{j=1}^r \varepsilon^{j-1} h_j \right) + \varepsilon \left( F - \sum_{j=1}^r \varepsilon^{j-1} F_j \right). \tag{37}
$$

The system described by the Hamiltonian [\(33\)](#page-13-1) is the one that we will put in normal form. In the following we will use the notation  $a \leq b$  to mean: there exists a positive constant

<span id="page-13-2"></span>*K* independent of *N* and *R* (but dependent on *r*, *k* and *p*), such that  $a \leq Kb$ . We exploit the following intermediate results:

 $\circledcirc$  Springer

**Lemma 2** *For any*  $k \geq k_1$  *and*  $p \in (1, +\infty)$  *there exists*  $B_{k,p}(R) \subset W^{k,p}$  *s.t.*  $\forall \sigma > 0$ *,*  $N > 0$ 

$$
\sup_{B_{k+\sigma+2(r+1),p}(R)} \|X_{\mathcal{R}_{N,r}}(\psi,\bar{\psi})\|_{W^{k,p}} \lesssim \frac{\varepsilon}{2^{\sigma(N+1)}},\tag{38}
$$

<span id="page-14-0"></span>
$$
\sup_{B_{k+2(r+1),p}(R)} \|X_{\mathscr{R}_r}(\psi,\bar{\psi})\|_{W^{k,p}} \lesssim \varepsilon^{r+1}.
$$
 (39)

*Proof* We recall that  $\mathcal{R}_{N,r} = h_0 + \sum_{j=1}^r \varepsilon^j h_j + \sum_{j=1}^r \varepsilon^j F_j - H_{N,r}$ . Now,  $\|id - \Pi_N\|_{W^{k+\sigma,p} \to W^{k,p}} \lesssim 2^{-\sigma(N+1)}$ , since

$$
\left\| \sum_{j \ge N+1} \phi_j(D) f \right\|_{W^{k,p}} \lesssim \left\| \left[ \sum_{j \ge N+1} |2^{jk} \phi_j(D) f|^2 \right]^{1/2} \right\|_{L^p}
$$
  

$$
\lesssim 2^{-\sigma(N+1)} \left\| \left[ \sum_{j \ge N+1} |2^{j(k+\sigma)} \phi_j(D) f|^2 \right]^{1/2} \right\|_{L^p}
$$
  

$$
\lesssim 2^{-\sigma(N+1)} \|f\|_{W^{k+\sigma,p}},
$$

hence

$$
\sup_{\psi \in B_{k+2(r+1)+\sigma,p}(R)} \|X_{\mathscr{R}_{N,r}}(\psi, \bar{\psi})\|_{W^{k,p}}\n\n\lesssim \|dX_{\sum_{j=1}^r \varepsilon^j(h_j + F_j)}\|_{L^\infty(B_{k+2(r+1),p}(R), W^{k,p})} \|id - \Pi_N\|_{L^\infty(B_{k+2(r+1)+\sigma,p}(R), B_{k+2(r+1),p})}\n\n\lesssim \varepsilon 2^{-\sigma(N+1)}.
$$

The estimate of  $X_{\mathcal{R}_r}$  follows from the hypothesis HVF.

**Lemma 3** *Let*  $j \ge 1$ *. Then for any*  $k \ge k_1 + 2(j - 1)$  *and*  $p \in (1, +\infty)$  *there exists*  $B_{k,p}(R) \subset W^{k,p}$  *such that* 

$$
\sup_{B_{k,p}(R)} \|X_{h_{j,N}}(\psi, \bar{\psi})\|_{k,p} \le K_{j,k,p}^{(h)} 2^{2jN},
$$
  
\n
$$
\sup_{B_{k,p}(R)} \|X_{F_{j,N}}(\psi, \bar{\psi})\|_{k,p} \le K_{j,k,p}^{(F)} 2^{2(j-1)N},
$$

*where*

$$
K_{j,k,p}^{(h)} := \sup_{B_{k,p}(R)} \|X_{h_j}(\psi, \bar{\psi})\|_{k-2j,p},
$$
  

$$
K_{j,k,p}^{(F)} := \sup_{B_{k,p}(R)} \|X_{F_j}(\psi, \bar{\psi})\|_{k-2(j-1),p}.
$$

*Proof* It follows from

$$
\sup_{\psi \in B_{k,p}(R)} \left\| \sum_{h \le N} \phi_h(D) X_{F_{j,N}}(\psi, \bar{\psi}) \right\|_{W^{k,p}} \lesssim \sup_{\psi \in B_{k,p}(R)} \left\| \left[ \sum_{h \le N} |2^{hk} \phi_h(D) X_{F_{j,N}}(\psi, \bar{\psi})|^2 \right]^{1/2} \right\|_{L^p} (40)
$$

$$
\leq 2^{2(j-1)N} \sup_{\psi \in B_{k,p}(R)} \left\| \left[ \sum_{h \leq N} |2^{h[k-2(j-1)]} \phi_h(D) X_{F_{j,N}}(\psi, \bar{\psi})|^2 \right]^{1/2} \right\|_{L^p} \tag{41}
$$

$$
\lesssim 2^{2(j-1)N} \sup_{\psi \in B_{k,p}(R)} \|X_{F_{j,N}}(\psi, \bar{\psi})\|_{k-2(j-1),p} \tag{42}
$$

$$
=K_{j,k,p}^{(F)}2^{2(j-1)N},\tag{43}
$$

and similarly for  $X_{h_{j,N}}$ .

Next we have to normalize the system  $(33)$ . In order to do this we need a slight reformulation of Theorem 4.4 in [\[2](#page-67-3)]. Here we report a statement of the result adapted to our context.

<span id="page-15-0"></span>**Lemma 4** *Let*  $k \geq k_1 + 2r$ *,*  $p \in (1, +\infty)$ *,*  $R > 0$ *, and consider the system* [\(33\)](#page-13-1)*. Assume that*  $\varepsilon < 2^{-4Nr}$ , and that

<span id="page-15-1"></span>
$$
\left(K_{k,p}^{(F,r)} + K_{k,p}^{(h,r)}\right) r 2^{2Nr} \varepsilon < 2^{-9} e^{-1} \pi^{-1} R,\tag{44}
$$

*where*

$$
K_{k,p}^{(F,r)} := \sup_{1 \le j \le r} \sup_{\psi \in B_{k,p}(R)} \|X_{F_j}(\psi, \bar{\psi})\|_{k-2(j-1), p},
$$
  

$$
K_{k,p}^{(h,r)} := \sup_{1 \le j \le r} \sup_{\psi \in B_{k,p}(R)} \|X_{h_j}(\psi, \bar{\psi})\|_{k-2j, p}.
$$

*Then there exists an analytic canonical transformation*  $\mathscr{T}_{\varepsilon,N}^{(r)}$  :  $B_{k,p}(R) \to B_{k,p}(2R)$  such *that*

$$
\sup_{B_{k,p}(R/2)} \|\mathcal{T}_{\varepsilon,N}^{(r)}(\psi,\bar{\psi}) - (\psi,\bar{\psi})\|_{W^{k,p}} \le 4\pi r K_{k,p}^{(F,r)} 2^{2Nr}\varepsilon,
$$

*and that puts* [\(33\)](#page-13-1) *in normal form up to a small remainder,*

<span id="page-15-2"></span>
$$
H_{N,r} \circ \mathcal{F}_{\varepsilon,N}^{(r)} = h_0 + \varepsilon h_{N,r} + \varepsilon Z_N^{(r)} + \varepsilon^{r+1} \mathcal{R}_N^{(r)},\tag{45}
$$

*with*  $Z_N^{(r)}$  *is in normal form, namely*  $\{h_{0,N}, Z_N^{(r)}\} = 0$ *, and* 

$$
\sup_{B_{k,p}(R/2)} \|X_{Z_N^{(r)}}(\psi, \bar{\psi})\|_{k,p} \le 4 \, 2^{2Nr} \, \varepsilon \left( r \, K_{k,p}^{(F,r)} + r \, K_{k,p}^{(h,r)} \right) \, r \, 2^{2Nr} \, K_{k,p}^{(F,r)} \n= 4r^2 \, K_{k,p}^{(F,r)} (K_{k,p}^{(F,r)} + K_{k,p}^{(h,r)}) 2^{4NR} \varepsilon, \tag{46}
$$

$$
=4r^{2}K_{k,p}^{(F,r)}(K_{k,p}^{(F,r)}+K_{k,p}^{(h,r)})2^{4NR}\varepsilon,
$$
\n
$$
\sup_{\mathbf{W}}||X_{\mathscr{R}_{s}^{(r)}}(\psi,\bar{\psi})||_{k,p} \tag{47}
$$

$$
\sup_{B_{k,p}(R/2)} \|X_{\mathcal{R}_N^{(r)}}(\psi,\psi)\|_{k,p} \tag{47}
$$

$$
\leq 2^8 e \frac{T}{R} (K_{k,p}^{(F,r)} + K_{k,p}^{(F,r)}) r 2^{2Nr} \tag{48}
$$

 $\bigcirc$  Springer

$$
\times \left[ \frac{4T}{R} \left( 2^9 3^2 e \frac{T}{R} (K_{k,p}^{(F,r)} + K_{k,p}^{(F,r)}) K_{k,p}^{(F,r)} r^2 2^{4Nr} \varepsilon + 5K_{k,p}^{(h,r)} r 2^{2Nr} + 5K_{k,p}^{(F,r)} r 2^{2Nr} \right) r \right]^r
$$
\n(49)

The proof of Lemma [4](#page-15-0) is postponed to "Appendix A."

*Remark 8* In the original notation of Theorem 4.4 in [\[2\]](#page-67-3) we set

<span id="page-16-0"></span>
$$
\mathscr{P} = W^{k, p},
$$
  
\n
$$
h_{\omega} = h_0,
$$
  
\n
$$
\hat{h} = \varepsilon h_{N,r},
$$
  
\n
$$
f = \varepsilon F_{N,r},
$$
  
\n
$$
f_1 = r = g \equiv 0,
$$
  
\n
$$
F = K_{k,p}^{(F,r)} r 2^{2Nr} \varepsilon,
$$
  
\n
$$
F_0 = K_{k,p}^{(h,r)} r 2^{2Nr} \varepsilon.
$$

*Remark 9* Actually, Lemma [4](#page-15-0) would also hold under a weaker smallness assumption on ε: It would be enough that  $\varepsilon < 2^{-2N}$ , and that

$$
\varepsilon \left[ K_{k,p}^{(F,r)} \frac{1 - 2^{2Nr} \varepsilon^r}{1 - 2^{2N}\varepsilon} + K_{k,p}^{(h,r)} \frac{2^{2N}(1 - 2^{2Nr} \varepsilon^r)}{1 - 2^{2N}\varepsilon} \right] < 2^{-9} e^{-1} \pi^{-1} R \tag{50}
$$

is satisfied. However, condition  $(50)$  is less explicit than  $(44)$ , which allows us to apply directly the scheme of [\[2\]](#page-67-3). The disadvantage of the stronger smallness assumption [\(44\)](#page-15-1) is that it holds for a smaller range of  $\varepsilon$ , and that at the end of the proof it will force us to choose a larger parameter  $\sigma = 4r^2$ . By using [\(50\)](#page-16-0) and by making a more careful analysis, it may be possible to prove Theorem [7](#page-12-0) also by choosing  $\sigma = 2r$ .

Now we conclude with the proof of Theorem [7.](#page-12-0)

*Proof* Now consider the transformation  $\mathcal{I}_{\varepsilon,N}^{(r)}$  defined by Lemma [4,](#page-15-0) then

$$
(\mathcal{T}_{\varepsilon,N}^{(r)})^* H = h_0 + \sum_{j=1}^r \varepsilon^j h_{j,N} + \varepsilon Z_N^{(r)} + \varepsilon^{r+1} \mathcal{R}_N^{(r)} + \varepsilon^r \mathcal{R}_{Gal}
$$

where we recall that

$$
\varepsilon^r \mathscr{R}_{Gal} := \left(\mathscr{T}_{\varepsilon,N}^{(r)}\right)^* \left(\mathscr{R}_{N,r} + \mathscr{R}_r\right).
$$

By exploiting Lemma [4](#page-15-0) we can estimate the vector field of  $\mathcal{R}_N^{(r)}$ , while by using Lemma [2](#page-13-2) and [\(275\)](#page-60-0) we get

$$
\sup_{B_{k+\sigma+2(r+1),p}(R/2)} \|X_{\mathscr{R}_{Gal}}(\psi,\bar{\psi})\|_{W^{k,p}} \lesssim \left(\frac{\varepsilon}{2^{\sigma(N+1)}} + \frac{\varepsilon^{r+1}}{\sigma+2(r+1)}\right). \tag{51}
$$

To get the result choose

$$
k_0 = \sigma + 2(r + 1),
$$
  
\n
$$
N = r\sigma^{-1} \log_2(1/\varepsilon) - 1,
$$
  
\n
$$
\sigma = 4r^2.
$$

<span id="page-16-1"></span> $\Box$ 

*Remark 10* The compatibility condition  $N \ge 1$  and [\(44\)](#page-15-1) lead to

$$
\varepsilon \le \left[2^{-9}e^{-1}\pi^{-1}R(K_{k,p}^{(F,r)}+K_{k,p}^{(h,r)})^{-1}r^{-1}2^{-2r}\right]^{\frac{\sigma}{2r}} =: \varepsilon_{r,k,p} \le 2^{-2\sigma/r} \le 2^{-8r}.
$$

*Remark 11* We point out the fact that Theorem [7](#page-12-0) holds for the scale of Banach spaces  $W^{k,p}(M, \mathbb{C}^n \times \mathbb{C}^n)$ , where  $k \geq 1, 1 \leq p \leq +\infty$ ,  $n \in \mathbb{N}_0$ , and where *M* is a smooth manifold on which the Littlewood–Paley decomposition can be constructed, for example, a compact manifold (see sect. 2.1 in [\[13](#page-68-16)]),  $\mathbb{R}^d$ , or a noncompact manifold satisfying some technical assumptions (see [\[12](#page-67-5)]).

If we restrict to the case  $p = 2$ , and we consider M as either  $\mathbb{R}^d$  or the *d*-dimensional torus  $\mathbb{T}^d$ , we can prove an analogous result for Hamiltonians  $H(\psi, \bar{\psi})$  with  $(\psi, \bar{\psi}) \in H^k :=$  $W^{k,2}(M,\mathbb{C}\times\mathbb{C})$ . In the following we denote by  $B_k(R)$  the open ball of radius R and center 0 in  $H^k$ . We recall that the Fourier projection operator on  $H^k$  is given by

$$
\pi_j \psi(x) := (2\pi)^{-d/2} \int_{j-1 \le |k| \le j} \hat{\psi}(k) e^{ik \cdot x} dk, \quad j \ge 1.
$$

<span id="page-17-0"></span>**Theorem 8** *Fix r*  $\geq 1$ *, R*  $> 0$ *, k*<sub>1</sub>  $\gg 1$ *. Consider* [\(27\)](#page-11-1)*, and assume PER, INV* (with respect *to Fourier projection operators), NF and HVF. Then*  $\exists k_0 = k_0(r) > 0$  with the following *properties: For any*  $k \geq k_1$  *there exists*  $\varepsilon_{r,k} \ll 1$  *such that for any*  $\varepsilon < \varepsilon_{r,k}$  *there exists*  $\mathscr{T}_{s}^{(r)}$ :  $B_k(R) \rightarrow B_k(2R)$  *transformation s.t.* 

$$
H_r := H \circ \mathcal{T}_{\varepsilon}^{(r)} = h_0 + \sum_{j=1}^r \varepsilon^j \mathcal{Z}_j + \varepsilon^{r+1} \mathcal{R}^{(r)},
$$

*where Z<sup>j</sup> are in normal form, namely*

$$
\{\mathscr{Z}_j, h_0\} = 0,\tag{52}
$$

*and*

$$
\sup_{B_{k+k_0}(R)} \|X_{\mathcal{R}^{(r)}}\|_{H^k} \le C_k,\tag{53}
$$

$$
\sup_{B_k(R)} \|\mathcal{T}_{\varepsilon}^{(r)} - id\|_{H^k} \le C_k \varepsilon. \tag{54}
$$

*In particular, we have that*

 $\mathscr{Z}_1(\psi, \bar{\psi}) = h_1(\psi, \bar{\psi}) + \langle F_1 \rangle (\psi, \bar{\psi}),$ *where*  $\langle F_1 \rangle$   $(\psi, \bar{\psi}) := \int_0^{2\pi} F_1 \circ \Phi^t(\psi, \bar{\psi}) \frac{dt}{2\pi}$ .

The only technical difference between the proofs of Theorem [7](#page-12-0) and the proof of Theorem [8](#page-17-0) is that we exploit the Fourier cutoff operator

$$
\Pi_N \psi(x) := \int_{|k| \le N} \hat{\psi}(k) e^{ik \cdot x} \mathrm{d}k,
$$

as in  $[3]$  $[3]$ . This in turn affects  $(38)$ , which in this case reads

$$
\sup_{B_{k+\sigma+2(r+1)}(R)} \|X_{\mathcal{R}_{N,r}}(\psi,\bar{\psi})\|_{H^k} \lesssim \frac{\varepsilon}{N^{\sigma}},\tag{55}
$$

and [\(51\)](#page-16-1), for which we have to choose a bigger cutoff,  $N = \varepsilon^{-r\sigma}$ .

 $\mathcal{L}$  Springer

# <span id="page-18-0"></span>**6 Application to the nonlinear Klein–Gordon equation**

# **6.1 The real nonlinear Klein–Gordon equation**

We first consider the Hamiltonian of the real nonlinear Klein–Gordon equation with power-type nonlinearity on a smooth manifold *M* (*M* is such that the Littlewood–Paley decomposition is well defined; take, for example, a smooth compact manifold, or  $\mathbb{R}^d$ ). The Hamiltonian is of the form

$$
H(u,v) = \frac{c^2}{2} \langle v, v \rangle + \frac{1}{2} \langle u, \langle \nabla \rangle_c^2 u \rangle + \lambda \int \frac{u^{2l}}{2l}, \tag{56}
$$

where  $\langle \nabla \rangle_c := (c^2 - \Delta)^{1/2}, \lambda \in \mathbb{R}, l \geq 2$ . If we introduce the complex-valued variable

<span id="page-18-1"></span>
$$
\psi := \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \left[ \left( \frac{\langle \nabla \rangle_c}{c} \right)^{1/2} u - i \left( \frac{c}{\langle \nabla \rangle_c} \right)^{1/2} v \right],\tag{57}
$$

(the corresponding symplectic 2-form becomes  $i d\psi \wedge d\bar{\psi}$ ), the Hamiltonian [\(56\)](#page-18-1) in the coordinates  $(\psi, \bar{\psi})$  is

$$
H(\bar{\psi}, \psi) = \langle \bar{\psi}, c \langle \nabla \rangle_c \psi \rangle + \frac{\lambda}{2l} \int \left[ \left( \frac{c}{\langle \nabla \rangle_c} \right)^{1/2} \frac{\psi + \bar{\psi}}{\sqrt{2}} \right]^{2l} dx. \tag{58}
$$

If we rescale the time by a factor  $c^2$ , the Hamiltonian takes the form [\(27\)](#page-11-1), with  $\varepsilon = \frac{1}{c^2}$ , and

<span id="page-18-3"></span><span id="page-18-2"></span>
$$
H(\psi, \bar{\psi}) = h_0(\psi, \bar{\psi}) + \varepsilon h(\psi, \bar{\psi}) + \varepsilon F(\psi, \bar{\psi}), \tag{59}
$$

where

$$
h_0(\psi, \bar{\psi}) = \langle \bar{\psi}, \psi \rangle, \tag{60}
$$

$$
h(\psi, \bar{\psi}) = \langle \bar{\psi}, (c\langle \nabla \rangle_c - c^2) \psi \rangle \sim \sum_{j \ge 1} \varepsilon^{j-1} \langle \bar{\psi}, a_j \Delta^j \psi \rangle =: \sum_{j \ge 1} \varepsilon^{j-1} h_j(\psi, \bar{\psi}), \quad (61)
$$

$$
F(\psi, \bar{\psi}) = \frac{\lambda}{2^{l+1}l} \int \left[ \left( \frac{c}{\langle \nabla \rangle_c} \right)^{1/2} (\psi + \bar{\psi}) \right]^{2l} dx \tag{62}
$$

$$
\sim \frac{\lambda}{2^{l+1}l} \int (\psi + \bar{\psi})^{2l} dx
$$
  
+  $\varepsilon b_2 \int \left[ (\psi + \bar{\psi})^{2l-1} \Delta(\psi + \bar{\psi}) + \dots + (\psi + \bar{\psi}) \Delta \left( (\psi + \bar{\psi})^{2l-1} \right) \right] dx$   
+  $\mathcal{O}(\varepsilon^2)$   
=:  $\sum_{j\geq 1} \varepsilon^{j-1} F_j(\psi, \bar{\psi}),$  (63)

where  $(a_j)_{j\geq 1}$  and  $(b_j)_{j\geq 1}$  are real coefficients, and  $F_j(\psi, \bar{\psi})$  is a polynomial function of the variables  $\psi$  and  $\bar{\psi}$  (along with their derivatives) and which admits a bounded vector field from a neighborhood of the origin in  $W^{k+2(j-1),p}$  to  $W^{k,p}$  for any  $1 < p < +\infty$ .

This description clearly fits the scheme treated in the previous section, and one can easily check that assumptions PER, NF and HVF are satisfied. Therefore, we can apply Theorem [7](#page-12-0) to the Hamiltonian [\(59\)](#page-18-2).

*Remark 12* About the normal forms obtained by applying Theorem [7,](#page-12-0) we remark that in the first step (case  $r = 1$  in the statement of the theorem) the homological equation we get is of the form

$$
\{\chi_1, h_0\} + F_1 = \langle F_1 \rangle, \tag{64}
$$

where  $F_1(\psi, \bar{\psi}) = \frac{\lambda}{2^{l+1}l} \int (\psi + \bar{\psi})^{2l} dx$ . Hence the transformed Hamiltonian is of the form

$$
H_1(\psi, \bar{\psi}) = h_0(\psi, \bar{\psi}) + \frac{1}{c^2} \left[ -\frac{1}{2} \langle \bar{\psi}, \Delta \psi \rangle + \langle F_1 \rangle (\psi, \bar{\psi}) \right] + \frac{1}{c^4} \mathcal{R}^{(1)}(\psi, \bar{\psi}), \tag{65}
$$

where

$$
\langle F_1 \rangle \left( \psi, \bar{\psi} \right) = \frac{\lambda}{2^{l+1}l} \binom{2l}{l} \int |\psi|^{2l} dx. \tag{66}
$$

If we neglect the remainder and we derive the corresponding equation of motion for the system, we get

$$
-i\psi_t = \psi + \frac{1}{c^2} \left[ -\frac{1}{2} \Delta \psi + \frac{\lambda}{2^{l+1}} {2l \choose l} |\psi|^{2(l-1)} \psi \right],
$$
(67)

which is the NLS, and the Hamiltonian which generates the canonical transformation is given by

<span id="page-19-0"></span>
$$
\chi_1(\psi, \bar{\psi}) = \frac{\lambda}{2^{l+1}l} \sum_{\substack{j=0,\dots,2l \ j \neq l}} \frac{1}{i \, 2(l-j)} \binom{2l}{j} \int \psi^{2l-j} \bar{\psi}^j \, dx. \tag{68}
$$

*Remark 13* Now we iterate the construction by passing to the case  $r = 2$ .

If we neglect the remainder of order  $c^{-6}$ , we have that

$$
H \circ \mathcal{T}^{(1)} = h_0 + \frac{1}{c^2} h_1 + \frac{1}{c^4} \{ \chi_1, h_1 \} + \frac{1}{c^4} h_2
$$
  
+ 
$$
\frac{1}{c^2} \langle F_1 \rangle + \frac{1}{c^4} \{ \chi_1, F_1 \} + \frac{1}{2c^4} \{ \chi_1, \{ \chi_1, h_0 \} \} + \frac{1}{c^4} F_2
$$
  
= 
$$
h_0 + \frac{1}{c^2} [h_1 + \langle F_1 \rangle] + \frac{1}{c^4} \left[ \{ \chi_1, h_1 \} + h_2 + \{ \chi_1, F_1 \} + \frac{1}{2} \{ \chi_1, \langle F_1 \rangle - F_1 \} + F_2 \right],
$$
  
(69)

where  $h_1(\psi, \bar{\psi}) = -\frac{1}{2} \langle \bar{\psi}, \Delta \psi \rangle$ , and  $\chi_1$  is of the form [\(68\)](#page-19-0).

Now we compute the terms of order  $\frac{1}{c^4}$ .

$$
\{\chi_1, h_1\} = d\chi_1 X_{h_1} = \frac{\partial \chi_1}{\partial \psi} \cdot i \frac{\partial h_1}{\partial \bar{\psi}} - i \frac{\partial \chi_1}{\bar{\psi}} \frac{\partial h_1}{\partial \psi}
$$
  

$$
= -\frac{\lambda}{2^{l+3}l} \int \left[ \sum_{\substack{j=0,\dots,2l-1 \ j\neq l}} \frac{1}{l-j} {2l \choose j} (2l-j) \psi^{2l-j-1} \bar{\psi}^j \right] \Delta \psi \, dx
$$
  

$$
+ \frac{\lambda}{2^{l+3}l} \int \left[ \sum_{\substack{j=1,\dots,2l \ j\neq l}} \frac{1}{l-j} {2l \choose j} j \psi^{2l-j} \bar{\psi}^{j-1} \right] \Delta \bar{\psi} \, dx
$$
  

$$
= -\frac{\lambda}{2^{l+3}l} \int \Delta \psi \, \psi^{2l-1} + \Delta \bar{\psi} \, \bar{\psi}^{2l-1} \, dx
$$

 $\bigcirc$  Springer

$$
-\frac{\lambda}{2^{l+3}l} \int \sum_{\substack{j=1,\dots,2l-1 \ j \neq l}} \frac{1}{l-j} {2l \choose j} \int (2l-j) \psi^{2l-j-1} \bar{\psi}^j \Delta \psi
$$
  
-  $j \psi^{2l-j} \bar{\psi}^{j-1} \Delta \bar{\psi} \, dx,$  (71)

and since  $j \neq l$  in the sum we have that

$$
\langle \{\chi_1, h_1\} \rangle = 0. \tag{72}
$$

Next,

$$
h_{2} = -\frac{1}{8} \langle \bar{\psi}, \Delta^{2} \psi \rangle, \qquad (73)
$$
\n
$$
\{\chi_{1}, F_{1}\}
$$
\n
$$
= \frac{\lambda^{2}}{2^{2l+3}l^{2}} \int \left[ \sum_{\substack{j=0,\ldots,2l-1 \ j \neq l}} \frac{1}{l-j} {2l \choose j} (2l-j) \psi^{2l-j-1} \bar{\psi}^{j} \right] \left[ \sum_{h=1}^{2l} {2l \choose h} h \psi^{2l-h} \bar{\psi}^{h-1} \right] dx
$$
\n
$$
- \frac{\lambda^{2}}{2^{2l+3}l^{2}} \int \left[ \sum_{\substack{j=1,\ldots,2l \ j \neq l}} \frac{1}{l-j} {2l \choose j} j \psi^{l-j} \bar{\psi}^{j-1} \right] \left[ \sum_{h=0}^{2l-1} {2l \choose h} (2l-h) \psi^{2l-h-1} \bar{\psi}^{h} \right] dx
$$
\n
$$
= \frac{\lambda^{2}}{2^{2l+3}l^{2}} \int \sum_{j,h=\frac{1,\ldots,2l-1}{j \neq l}} \frac{1}{l-j} {2l \choose j} {2l \choose h} [(2l-j)h-j(2l-h)] \int \psi^{4l-j-h-1} \bar{\psi}^{j+h-1} dx
$$
\n
$$
+ \frac{\lambda^{2}}{2^{2l+3}l^{2}} 2 \int \psi^{2l-1} \left[ \sum_{j=0,\ldots,2l-1} \frac{1}{l-j} {2l \choose j} (2l-j) \psi^{2l-j-1} \bar{\psi}^{j} \right] dx
$$
\n
$$
+ \frac{\lambda^{2}}{2^{2l+3}l^{2}} 2 \int \bar{\psi}^{2l-1} \left[ \sum_{h=0}^{2l-1} {2l \choose h} (2l-j) \psi^{2l-j-1} \bar{\psi}^{j} \right] dx
$$
\n
$$
- \frac{\lambda^{2}}{2^{2l+3}l^{2}} 2 \int \bar{\psi}^{2l-1} \left[ \sum_{j=1,\ldots,2l} \frac{1}{l-j} {2l \choose j} (2l-h) \psi^{2l-h-1} \bar{\psi}^{h} \right] dx
$$
\n

$$
K(l) := \frac{1}{2^{2l+3}l^2} \left\{ \left( \sum_{\substack{j, h=1,\dots,2l-1 \ j \neq l}} \frac{1}{l-j} {2l \choose j} {2l \choose h} [(2l-j)h - j(2l-h)] \right) + 16l \right\}, \quad (76)
$$

where  $K(l) > 0$  by the conditions on *j* and *h* in the sum.

<sup>2</sup> Springer

Then,

$$
\{ \chi_{1}, \langle F_{1} \rangle \} = \frac{\lambda^{2}}{2^{2l+3}l^{2}} {2l \choose l} \int \sum_{j=0,...,2l-1} \frac{1}{l-j} {2l \choose j} (2l-j)l \psi^{2l-j-1} \bar{\psi}^{j} \psi^{l} \bar{\psi}^{l-1} d\mathbf{x}
$$
  

$$
- \frac{\lambda^{2}}{2^{2l+3}l^{2}} {2l \choose l} \int \sum_{\substack{j=1,...,2l \ j \neq l}} \frac{1}{l-j} {2l \choose j} l \psi^{2l-j} \bar{\psi}^{j-1} \psi^{l-1} \bar{\psi}^{l} d\mathbf{x}
$$
  

$$
= \frac{\lambda^{2}}{2^{2l+3}l^{2}} {2l \choose l} \left[ {2l \choose l} 2 \int \psi^{3l-1} \bar{\psi}^{l-1} + \psi^{l-1} \bar{\psi}^{3l-1} d\mathbf{x}
$$
  

$$
+ \sum_{\substack{j=1,...,2l-1 \ j \neq l}} 2l {2l \choose j} \int \psi^{3l-j-1} \bar{\psi}^{j+l-1} d\mathbf{x} \right], \qquad (77)
$$

and since  $j \neq l$  in the sum we have that

$$
\langle \{\chi_1, \langle F_1 \rangle\} \rangle = 0. \tag{78}
$$

Furthermore,

$$
F_2 = \frac{\lambda}{2^{l+3}l} 2l \int (\psi + \bar{\psi})^{2l-1} \Delta(\psi + \bar{\psi}) dx
$$
  
= 
$$
\frac{\lambda}{2^{l+2}} \sum_{j=0}^{2l-1} {2l-1 \choose j} \int \psi^{2l-j-1} \bar{\psi}^j (\Delta \psi + \Delta \bar{\psi}) dx,
$$
 (79)

$$
\langle F_2 \rangle = \frac{\lambda}{2^{l+2}} \int \binom{2l-1}{l} \psi^{l-1} \bar{\psi}^l \Delta \psi + \binom{2l-1}{l-1} \psi^l \bar{\psi}^{l-1} \Delta \bar{\psi} \, dx
$$

$$
= \frac{\lambda}{2^{l+2}} \binom{2l-1}{l} \int |\psi|^{2(l-1)} (\bar{\psi} \Delta \psi + \psi \Delta \bar{\psi}) \, dx \tag{80}
$$

Hence, up to a remainder of order  $O\left(\frac{1}{c^6}\right)$ , we have that

$$
H_2 = h_0 + \frac{1}{c^2} \int \left[ -\frac{1}{2} \langle \bar{\psi}, \Delta \psi \rangle + \frac{\lambda}{2^{l+1} l} {2l \choose l} |\psi|^{2l} \right] dx + \frac{1}{c^4} \int \left[ \lambda^2 K(l) |\psi|^{2(2l-1)} + \frac{\lambda}{2^{l+2}} {2l \choose l} |\psi|^{2(l-1)} (\bar{\psi} \Delta \psi + \psi \Delta \bar{\psi}) - \frac{1}{8} \langle \bar{\psi}, \Delta^2 \psi \rangle \right] dx,
$$
\n(81)

which, by neglecting  $h_0$  (that yields only a gauge factor) and by rescaling the time, leads to the following equations of motion

$$
-i\psi_t = -\frac{1}{2}\Delta\psi + \frac{\lambda}{2^{l+1}} \binom{2l}{l} |\psi|^{2(l-1)}\psi + \frac{1}{c^2} \left[ -\frac{1}{8}\Delta^2\psi + \lambda^2 K(l)(2l-1)|\psi|^{4(l-1)}\psi \right] + \frac{1}{c^2} \left[ \frac{\lambda}{2^{l+2}} \binom{2l-1}{l} \left( l|\psi|^{2(l-1)}\Delta\psi + (l-1)|\psi|^{2(l-2)}\psi^2\Delta\bar{\psi} + \Delta(|\psi|^{2(l-1)}\bar{\psi}) \right) \right],
$$
(82)

<sup>2</sup> Springer

which, for example, in the case of a cubic nonlinearity  $(l = 2)$  reads

<span id="page-22-0"></span>
$$
-i\psi_t = -\frac{1}{2}\Delta\psi + \frac{3}{4}\lambda|\psi|^2\psi
$$
  
+ 
$$
\frac{1}{c^2} \left[ \frac{51}{8}\lambda^2|\psi|^4\psi + \frac{3}{16}\lambda (2|\psi|^2 \Delta\psi + \psi^2 \Delta\bar{\psi} + \Delta(|\psi|^2 \bar{\psi})) - \frac{1}{8}\Delta^2\psi \right].
$$
 (83)

To the author's knowledge, Eq. [\(83\)](#page-22-0) has never been studied before. It is the nonlinear analogue of a linear higher-order Schrödinger equation that appears in [\[14](#page-68-12)[,15](#page-68-17)] in the context of semirelativistic equations. Indeed, the linearization of Eq. [\(83\)](#page-22-0) is studied within the framework of relativistic quantum field theory, as an approximation of nonlocal kinetic terms; Carles, Lucha and Moulay studied the well-posedness of these approximations, as well as the convergence of the equations as the order of truncation goes to infinity, in the linear case, also when one takes into account the effects of some time-independent potentials (e.g., bounded potentials, the harmonic oscillator potential and the Coulomb potential).

*Remark 14* We point out that the case of the one-dimensional cubic defocusing NLKG is also interesting, since for  $\lambda = 1$  the normalized equation at first step is the cubic defocusing NLS, which is known to be integrable by the inverse scattering method. It would be interesting to reach a better understanding of the one-dimensional normalized equation, even in the case  $r = 2$ .

Even though there is a one-dimensional integrable 4NLS equation related to the dynamics of a vortex filament (see [\[52\]](#page-69-10) and references therein),

$$
i\psi_t + \psi_{xx} + \frac{1}{2}|\psi|^2\psi - \nu\left[\psi_{xxxx} + \frac{3}{2}|\psi|^2\psi_{xx} + \frac{3}{2}\psi_x^2\bar{\psi} + \frac{3}{8}|\psi|^4\psi + \frac{1}{2}(|\psi|^2)_{xx}\psi\right]
$$
  
= 0,  $\nu \in \mathbb{R}$  (84)

apparently there is no obvious relation between the above equation and Eq. [\(83\)](#page-22-0).

# **6.2 The complex nonlinear Klein–Gordon equation**

Now we consider the Hamiltonian of the complex nonlinear Klein–Gordon equation with power-type nonlinearity on a smooth manifold *M* (take, for example, a smooth compact manifold, or  $\mathbb{R}^d$ )

$$
H(w, p_w) = \frac{c^2}{2} \langle p_w, p_w \rangle + \frac{1}{2} \langle w, \langle \nabla \rangle_c^2 w \rangle + \lambda \int \frac{|w|^{2l}}{2l}, \tag{85}
$$

where  $w : \mathbb{R} \times M \to \mathbb{C}, \langle \nabla \rangle_c := (c^2 - \Delta)^{1/2}, \lambda \in \mathbb{R}, l \geq 2.$ 

If we rewrite the Hamiltonian in terms of  $u := Re(w)$  and  $v := Im(w)$ , we have

$$
H(u, v, p_u, p_v) = \frac{c^2}{2} ((p_u, p_u) + \langle p_v, p_v \rangle) + \frac{1}{2} (|\nabla u|^2 + |\nabla v|^2) + \frac{c^2}{2} (u^2 + v^2) + \lambda \int \frac{(u^2 + v^2)^l}{2l}.
$$
 (86)

We consider by simplicity only the cubic case  $(l = 2)$ , but the argument may be readily generalized to the other power-type nonlinearities.

<span id="page-22-1"></span> $\hat{\mathfrak{D}}$  Springer

If we introduce the variables

$$
\psi := \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \left[ \left( \frac{\langle \nabla \rangle_c}{c} \right)^{1/2} u - i \left( \frac{c}{\langle \nabla \rangle_c} \right)^{1/2} p_u \right],\tag{87}
$$

$$
\phi := \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \left[ \left( \frac{\langle \nabla \rangle_c}{c} \right)^{1/2} v + i \left( \frac{c}{\langle \nabla \rangle_c} \right)^{1/2} p_v \right],\tag{88}
$$

(the corresponding symplectic 2-form becomes  $i d\psi \wedge d\bar{\psi} - i d\phi \wedge d\bar{\phi}$ ), the Hamiltonian [\(85\)](#page-22-1) in the coordinates  $(\psi, \phi, \bar{\psi}, \bar{\phi})$  reads

$$
H(\psi, \phi, \bar{\psi}, \bar{\phi}) = \langle \bar{\psi}, c \langle \nabla \rangle_c \psi \rangle + \langle \bar{\phi}, c \langle \nabla \rangle_c \phi \rangle \tag{89}
$$

$$
+ \frac{\lambda}{16} \int_M \left[ \left\langle \psi + \bar{\psi}, \frac{c}{\langle \nabla \rangle_c} (\psi + \bar{\psi}) \right\rangle + \left\langle \phi + \bar{\phi}, \frac{c}{\langle \nabla \rangle_c} (\phi + \bar{\phi}) \right\rangle \right]^2 dx, \tag{90}
$$

with corresponding equations of motion

$$
\begin{cases}\n-i\psi_t &= c\langle \nabla \rangle_c \psi + \frac{1}{4} \left[ \langle \psi + \bar{\psi}, \frac{c}{\langle \nabla \rangle_c} (\psi + \bar{\psi}) \rangle + \langle \phi + \bar{\phi}, \frac{c}{\langle \nabla \rangle_c} (\phi + \bar{\phi}) \rangle \right] \frac{c}{\langle \nabla \rangle_c} (\psi + \bar{\psi}), \\
i\phi_t &= c\langle \nabla \rangle_c \phi + \frac{1}{4} \left[ \langle \psi + \bar{\psi}, \frac{c}{\langle \nabla \rangle_c} (\psi + \bar{\psi}) \rangle + \langle \phi + \bar{\phi}, \frac{c}{\langle \nabla \rangle_c} (\phi + \bar{\phi}) \rangle \right] \frac{c}{\langle \nabla \rangle_c} (\phi + \bar{\phi}).\n\end{cases}
$$

If we rescale the time by a factor  $c^2$ , the Hamiltonian takes the form [\(27\)](#page-11-1), with  $\varepsilon = \frac{1}{c^2}$ , and

<span id="page-23-0"></span>
$$
H(\psi, \phi, \bar{\psi}, \bar{\phi}) = H_0(\psi, \phi, \bar{\psi}, \bar{\phi}) + \varepsilon h(\psi, \phi, \bar{\psi}, \bar{\phi}) + \varepsilon F(\psi, \phi, \bar{\psi}, \bar{\phi}), \quad (91)
$$

where

$$
H_0(\psi, \phi, \bar{\psi}, \bar{\phi}) = \langle \bar{\psi}, \psi \rangle + \langle \bar{\phi}, \phi \rangle, \tag{92}
$$
\n
$$
h(\psi, \phi, \bar{\psi}, \bar{\phi}) = \langle \bar{\psi}, (c\langle \nabla \rangle_c - c^2) \psi \rangle - \langle \bar{\phi}, (c\langle \nabla \rangle_c - c^2) \phi \rangle
$$
\n
$$
\sim \sum_{j \ge 1} \varepsilon^{j-1} \left( \langle \bar{\psi}, a_j \Delta^j \psi \rangle + \langle \bar{\phi}, a_j \Delta^j \phi \rangle \right)
$$
\n
$$
=: \sum_{j \ge 1} \varepsilon^{j-1} (h_j(\psi, \phi, \bar{\psi}, \bar{\phi})), \tag{93}
$$
\n
$$
F(\psi, \phi, \bar{\psi}, \bar{\phi}) = \frac{\lambda}{16} \int_{\mathbb{T}} \left[ \langle \psi + \bar{\psi}, \frac{c}{\langle \nabla \rangle_c} (\psi + \bar{\psi}) \rangle + \langle \phi + \bar{\phi}, \frac{c}{\langle \nabla \rangle_c} (\phi + \bar{\phi}) \rangle \right]^2 dx,
$$

$$
\begin{aligned} \n\langle \psi, \phi, \psi, \phi \rangle &= \frac{1}{16} \int_{\mathbb{T}} \left[ \left( \psi + \psi, \frac{\nabla \chi_{c}}{\nabla \chi_{c}} (\psi + \psi) \right) + \left( \psi + \phi, \frac{\nabla \chi_{c}}{\nabla \chi_{c}} (\phi + \psi) \right) \right] \, \mathrm{d}x, \\ \n&\sim \frac{\lambda}{16} \int \left[ |\psi + \bar{\psi}|^{2} + |\phi + \bar{\phi}|^{2} \right]^{2} \mathrm{d}x \\ \n&\quad + \mathcal{O}(\varepsilon) \\ \n&=: \sum_{j \geq 1} \varepsilon^{j-1} \, F_{j}(\psi, \phi, \bar{\psi}, \bar{\phi}), \n\end{aligned} \tag{94}
$$

where  $(a_j)_{j\geq 1}$  are real coefficients, and  $F_j(\psi, \phi, \bar{\psi}, \bar{\phi})$  is a polynomial function of the variables  $\psi$ ,  $\phi$ ,  $\psi$ ,  $\phi$  (along with their derivatives) and which admits a bounded vector field from a neighborhood of the origin in  $W^{k+2(j-1),p}(\mathbb{R}^d, \mathbb{C}^2 \times \mathbb{C}^2)$  to  $W^{k,p}(\mathbb{R}^d, \mathbb{C}^2 \times \mathbb{C}^2)$  for any  $1 < p < +\infty$ .

This description clearly fits the scheme treated in Sect. [4](#page-10-0) with  $n = 2$ , and one can easily check that assumptions PER, NF and HVF are satisfied. Therefore, we can apply Theorem [7](#page-12-0) to the Hamiltonian [\(91\)](#page-23-0).

*Remark 15* About the normal forms obtained by applying Theorem [7,](#page-12-0) we remark that in the first step (case  $r = 1$  in the statement of the theorem) the homological equation we get is of the form

$$
\{\chi_1, h_0\} + F_1 = \langle F_1 \rangle, \tag{95}
$$

where  $F_1(\psi, \bar{\psi}) = \frac{\lambda}{16} \int [|\psi + \bar{\psi}|^2 + |\phi + \bar{\phi}|^2]^2 dx$ . Hence the transformed Hamiltonian is of the form

$$
H_1(\psi, \phi, \bar{\psi}, \bar{\phi}) = h_0(\psi, \phi, \bar{\psi}, \bar{\phi}) + \frac{1}{c^2} \left[ -\frac{1}{2} \left( \langle \bar{\psi}, \Delta \psi \rangle + \langle \bar{\phi}, \Delta \phi \rangle \right) + \langle F_1 \rangle \left( \psi, \phi, \bar{\psi}, \bar{\phi} \right) \right] + \frac{1}{c^4} \mathcal{R}^{(1)}(\psi, \phi, \bar{\psi}, \bar{\phi}), \tag{96}
$$

where

$$
\langle F_1 \rangle = \frac{\lambda}{16} \left[ 6\psi^2 \bar{\psi}^2 + 6\phi^2 \bar{\phi}^2 + 8\psi \bar{\psi} \phi \bar{\phi} + 2\psi^2 \phi^2 + 2\bar{\psi}^2 \bar{\phi}^2 \right]
$$
  
=  $\frac{\lambda}{8} \left[ 3(|\psi|^2 + |\phi|^2)^2 + 2(\psi \phi - \bar{\psi} \bar{\phi})^2 \right].$ 

If we neglect the remainder and we derive the corresponding equations of motion for the system, we get

$$
\begin{cases}\n-i\psi_t &= \psi + \frac{1}{c^2} \left\{ -\frac{1}{2} \Delta \psi + \frac{\lambda}{4} \left[ 3(|\psi|^2 + |\phi|^2) \psi + 2(\psi \phi + \bar{\psi} \bar{\phi}) \bar{\phi} \right] \right\}, \\
i\phi_t &= \phi + \frac{1}{c^2} \left\{ -\frac{1}{2} \Delta \phi + \frac{\lambda}{4} \left[ 3(|\psi|^2 + |\phi|^2) \phi + 2(\psi \phi + \bar{\psi} \bar{\phi}) \bar{\psi} \right] \right\},\n\end{cases} \tag{97}
$$

which is a system of two coupled NLS equations.

# <span id="page-24-0"></span>**7 Dynamics**

Now we want to exploit the result of the previous section in order to deduce some consequences about the dynamics of the NLKG equation [\(3\)](#page-2-2) in the nonrelativistic limit. Consider the *simplified system*, that is, the Hamiltonian  $H_r$  in the notations of Theorem [7,](#page-12-0) where we neglect the remainder:

$$
H_{simp} := h_0 + \varepsilon (h_1 + \langle F_1 \rangle) + \sum_{j=2}^r \varepsilon^j (h_j + Z_j).
$$

We recall that in the case of the NLKG the simplified system is actually the NLS (given by  $h_0 + \varepsilon(h_1 + \langle F_1 \rangle)$ , plus higher-order normalized corrections. Now let  $\psi_r$  be a solution of

$$
-i\,\dot{\psi}_r = X_{H_{simp}}(\psi_r),\tag{98}
$$

then  $\psi_a(t, x) := \mathcal{T}^{(r)}(\psi_r(c^2t, x))$  solves

$$
\dot{\psi}_a = ic \langle \nabla \rangle_c \psi_a + \frac{\lambda}{2l} \left( \frac{c}{\langle \nabla \rangle_c} \right)^{1/2} \left[ \left( \frac{c}{\langle \nabla \rangle_c} \right)^{1/2} \frac{\psi_a + \bar{\psi}_a}{\sqrt{2}} \right]^{2l-1} - \frac{1}{c^{2r}} X_{\mathscr{T}^{(r)*}\mathscr{R}^{(r)}}(\psi_a, \bar{\psi}_a), \tag{99}
$$

that is, the NLKG plus a remainder of order  $c^{-2r}$  (in the following we will refer to Eq. [\(99\)](#page-24-2) as *approximate equation*, and to  $\psi_a$  as the *approximate solution* of the original NLKG). We

<span id="page-24-2"></span><span id="page-24-1"></span> $\hat{\mathfrak{D}}$  Springer

point out that the original NLKG and the approximate equation differ only by a remainder of order  $c^{-2r}$ , which is evaluated on the approximate solution. This fact is extremely important: indeed, if one can prove the smoothness of the approximate solution (which often is easier to check than the smoothness of the solution of the original equation), then the contribution of the remainder may be considered small in the nonrelativistic limit. This property is rather general and has been already applied in the framework of normal form theory (see, for example, [\[4\]](#page-67-4)).

Now let  $\psi$  be a solution of the NLKG equation [\(3\)](#page-2-2) with the initial datum  $\psi_0$ , and let  $\delta := \psi - \psi_a$  be the error between the solution of the approximate equation and the original one. One can check that  $\delta$  fulfills

$$
\dot{\delta} = ic\langle \nabla \rangle_c \delta + [P(\psi_a + \delta, \bar{\psi}_a + \bar{\delta}) - P(\psi_a, \bar{\psi}_a)] + \frac{1}{c^{2r}} X_{\mathscr{T}^{(r)*}\mathscr{R}^{(r)}}(\psi_a(t), \bar{\psi}_a(t)),
$$

where

$$
P(\psi, \bar{\psi}) = \frac{\lambda}{2l} \left(\frac{c}{\langle \nabla \rangle_c}\right)^{1/2} \left[ \left(\frac{c}{\langle \nabla \rangle_c}\right)^{1/2} \frac{\psi + \bar{\psi}}{\sqrt{2}} \right]^{2l-1} . \tag{100}
$$

Thus we get

$$
\dot{\delta} = i \, c \langle \nabla \rangle_c \delta + d \, P(\psi_a(t)) \delta + \mathcal{O}(\delta^2) + \mathcal{O}\left(\frac{1}{c^{2r}}\right);
$$
\n
$$
\delta(t) = e^{itc \langle \nabla \rangle_c} \delta_0 + \int_0^t e^{i(t-s)c \langle \nabla \rangle_c} d \, P(\psi_a(s)) \delta(s) \mathrm{d}s + \mathcal{O}(\delta^2) + \mathcal{O}\left(\frac{1}{c^{2r}}\right). \tag{101}
$$

<span id="page-25-2"></span>By applying Gronwall inequality to [\(101\)](#page-25-0) we obtain

**Proposition 3** *Fix*  $r \ge 1$ ,  $R > 0$ ,  $k_1 \gg 1$ ,  $1 < p < +\infty$ . Then  $\exists k_0 = k_0(r) > 0$ *with the following properties: For any*  $k \geq k_1$  *<i>there exists*  $c_{l,r,k,p,R} \gg 1$  *such that for any*  $c > c_{l,r,k,p,R}$ , if we assume that

<span id="page-25-4"></span><span id="page-25-1"></span><span id="page-25-0"></span>
$$
\|\psi_0\|_{k+k_0,p}\leq R
$$

*and that there exists*  $T = T_{r,k,p} > 0$  *such that the solution of* [\(98\)](#page-24-1) *satisfies* 

$$
\|\psi_r(t)\|_{k+k_0,p}\leq 2R,\ \ \text{for}\ \ 0\leq t\leq T,
$$

*then*

$$
\|\delta(t)\|_{k,p} \le C_{k,p} \, c^{-2r}, \quad \text{for} \quad 0 \le t \le T. \tag{102}
$$

*Remark 16* If we restrict to  $p = 2$ , and to  $M = \mathbb{T}^d$ , the above result is actually a reformulation of Theorem 3.2 in [\[23\]](#page-68-11). We also remark that the time interval [0, *T* ] in which estimate [\(102\)](#page-25-1) is valid is *independent* of *c*.

*Remark 17* By exploiting estimate [\(32\)](#page-13-3) about the canonical transformation, Proposition [3](#page-25-2) leads immediately to a proof of Theorem [2.](#page-4-0)

In order to study the evolution of the error between the approximate solution and the solution of the NLKG over longer (namely, *c*-dependent) timescales, we observe that the error is described by

<span id="page-25-3"></span>
$$
\dot{\delta}(t) = i \, c \langle \nabla \rangle_c \delta(t) + d \, P(\psi_a(t)) \delta(t); \tag{103}
$$

$$
\delta(t) = e^{itc\langle \nabla \rangle_c} \delta_0 + \int_0^t e^{i(t-s)c\langle \nabla \rangle_c} dP(\psi_a(s)) \delta(s) ds,
$$
\n(104)

 $\circledcirc$  Springer

up to a remainder which is small, if we assume the smoothness of  $\psi_a$ .

Equation [\(103\)](#page-25-3) in the context of dispersive PDEs is known as *semirelativistic spinless Salpeter equation* with a time-dependent potential. This system was introduced as a first order in time analogue of the KG equation for the Lorentz covariant description of bound states within the framework of relativistic quantum field theory, and, despite the nonlocality of its Hamiltonian, some of its properties have already been studied. (See [\[55](#page-69-11)] for a study from a physical point of view; for a more mathematical approach, see [\[33\]](#page-68-18) and the more recent works [\[14](#page-68-12)[,15\]](#page-68-17), which are closer to the spirit of our approximation.)

It seems reasonable to estimate the solution of Eq.  $(103)$  by studying and by exploiting its dispersive properties, and this will be the aim of the following sections. From now on we will consider only the case  $M = \mathbb{R}^d$  for  $d \ge 2$ .

# <span id="page-26-0"></span>**8 Properties of the normal form equation**

#### **8.1 Linear case**

Now let  $r \geq 1$ ,  $d \geq 2$ . In [\[14](#page-68-12)[,15](#page-68-17)] the authors proved that the linearized normal form system, namely the one that corresponds (up to a rescaling of time by a factor  $c^2$ ) to

<span id="page-26-3"></span><span id="page-26-1"></span>
$$
-i\psi_r = X_{h_0 + \sum_{j=1}^r \varepsilon^j h_j}(\psi_r),
$$
  

$$
\psi_r(0) = \psi_0,
$$
 (105)

admits a unique solution in  $L^{\infty}(\mathbb{R})$  *H*<sup>*k*+*k*<sub>0</sub> ( $\mathbb{R}^{d}$ ) (this is a simple application of the properties of</sup> the Fourier transform), and by a perturbative argument they also proved the global existence also for the higher oder Schrödinger equation with a bounded time-independent potential.

Moreover, by following the arguments of Theorem 4.1 in [\[31\]](#page-68-19) and Lemma 4.3 in [\[14](#page-68-12)] one obtains the following dispersive estimates and local-in-time Strichartz estimates for solutions of the linearized normal form equation [\(105\)](#page-26-1).

**Proposition 4** *(Fig. [1\)](#page-26-2)* Let  $r \geq 1$  *and*  $d \geq 2$ *, and denote by*  $\mathcal{U}_r(t)$  *the evolution operator of* [\(105\)](#page-26-1) *at the time*  $c^2t$  *(c*  $\geq$  1, *t* > 0). Then one has the following local-in-time dispersive *estimate*

$$
\|\mathscr{U}_r(t)\|_{L^1(\mathbb{R}^d)\to L^\infty(\mathbb{R}^d)} \lesssim c^{d\left(1-\frac{1}{r}\right)}|t|^{-d/(2r)}, \quad 0<|t|\lesssim c^{2(r-1)}.\tag{106}
$$

*On the other hand,*  $\mathcal{U}_r(t)$  *is unitary on*  $L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)$ *. Now introduce the following set of admissible exponent pairs:*

$$
\Delta_r := \{ (p, q) : (1/p, 1/q) \text{ lies in the closed quadrilateral ABCD} \},\tag{107}
$$



<span id="page-26-2"></span>**Fig. 1** Set of admissible exponents  $\Delta_r$  for different values of *r*: **a**  $r = 1$  (this is the Schrödinger case); **b**  $r = 2$ ; **c**  $r = 11$ 

*where*

$$
A = \left(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\right), \quad B = \left(1, \frac{1}{\tau_r}\right), \quad C = (1, 0), \quad D = \left(\frac{1}{\tau_r'}, 0\right),
$$
  

$$
\tau_r = \frac{2r - 1}{r - 1}, \quad \frac{1}{\tau_r} + \frac{1}{\tau_{r'}} = 1.
$$

*Then for any*  $(p, q) \in \Delta_r \setminus \{(2, 2), (1, \tau_r), (\tau_r', \infty)\}\$ 

$$
\|\mathscr{U}_r(t)\|_{L^p(\mathbb{R}^d)\to L^q(\mathbb{R}^d)} \lesssim c^{d\left(1-\frac{1}{r}\right)\left(\frac{1}{p}-\frac{1}{q}\right)}|t|^{-\frac{d}{2r}\left(\frac{1}{q}-\frac{1}{p}\right)}, \quad 0<|t|\lesssim c^{2(r-1)},\tag{108}
$$

Let  $r > 1$  and  $d \ge 2$ : In the following lemma  $(p, q)$  is called an order-*r* admissible pair when  $2 < p, q < +\infty$  for  $r > 2$  ( $2 < q < 2d/(d-2)$  for  $r = 1$ ), and

<span id="page-27-3"></span><span id="page-27-2"></span>
$$
\frac{2}{p} + \frac{d}{rq} = \frac{d}{2r}.\tag{109}
$$

**Proposition 5** *Let r* > 1 *and d* > 2*, and denote by*  $\mathcal{U}_r(t)$  *the evolution operator of* [\(105\)](#page-26-1) *at the time c*<sup>2</sup>*t* (*c*  $\geq$  1, *t*  $>$  0). Let (*p*, *q*) and (*a*, *b*) *be order-r admissible pairs, then for any*  $T \lesssim c^{2(r-1)}$ 

$$
\|\mathscr{U}_r(t)\phi_0\|_{L^p([0,T])L^q(\mathbb{R}^d)} \lesssim c^{d\left(1-\frac{1}{r}\right)\left(\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{q}\right)} \|\phi_0\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} = c^{\left(1-\frac{1}{r}\right)\frac{2r}{p}} \|\phi_0\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)},\tag{110}
$$

$$
\left\| \int_0^t \mathcal{U}_r(t-\tau) \phi(\tau) d\tau \right\|_{L^p([0,T])L^q(\mathbb{R}^d)} \lesssim c^{\left(1-\frac{1}{r}\right)2r\left(\frac{1}{p}+\frac{1}{a}\right)} \|\phi\|_{L^{a'}([0,T])L^{b'}(\mathbb{R}^d)}.
$$
 (111)

# <span id="page-27-0"></span>**8.2 Well-posedness of higher-order nonlinear Schrödinger equations with small data**

Here we discuss the local well-posedness of

$$
-i\psi_t = A_{c,r}\psi + P((\partial_x^{\alpha}\psi)_{|\alpha| \le 2(r-1)}, (\partial_x^{\alpha}\bar{\psi})_{|\alpha| \le 2(r-1)}), \quad t \in I, \ x \in \mathbb{R}^d,
$$
 (112)

$$
\psi(0, x) = \psi_0(x),\tag{113}
$$

where  $r > 2$ ,  $I := [0, T]$ ,  $T > 0$ ,

<span id="page-27-1"></span>
$$
A_{c,r} = c^2 - \sum_{j=1}^r \frac{\Delta^j}{c^{2(j-1)}}, \quad c \ge 1,
$$

and *P* is an analytic function at the origin of the form

$$
P(z) = \sum_{m+1 \le |\beta| < M} a_{\beta} z^{\beta}, \quad |a_{\beta}| \le K^{|\beta|}, \ |z| \ll 1,\tag{114}
$$

where  $M > m > 2, m, M \in \mathbb{N}$ .

We will exploit this result during the proof of Theorem [4.](#page-5-0) We will adapt an argument of [\[50\]](#page-69-6) in order to show the local well-posedness of equation for data with small norm in the so-called modulation spaces.

Modulation spaces  $M_{p,q}^s$  ( $s \in \mathbb{R}$ ,  $0 < p, q < +\infty$ ) were introduced by Feichtinger, and they can be seen as a variant of Besov spaces, in the sense that they allow to perform a frequency decomposition of operators, and to study their properties with respect to lower and higher frequencies. This spaces were recently used in order to prove global well-posedness and scattering for small data for nonlinear dispersive PDEs, especially in the case of derivative

nonlinearities (see, for example, [\[50](#page-69-6)[,58](#page-69-12)[,59\]](#page-69-13)). We refer to [\[49](#page-69-14)] for a survey about modulation spaces and nonlinear evolution equations.

We define the norm on modulation spaces via the following decomposition: Let  $\sigma : \mathbb{R}^d \to$  $\mathbb R$  be a function such that

$$
supp(\sigma) \subset [-3/4, 3/4]^d,
$$

and consider a function sequence  $(\sigma_k)_{k \in \mathbb{Z}^d}$  satisfying

<span id="page-28-1"></span><span id="page-28-0"></span>
$$
\sigma_k(\cdot) = \sigma(\cdot - k),\tag{115}
$$

$$
\sum_{k \in \mathbb{Z}^d} \sigma_k(\xi) = 1, \quad \forall \xi \in \mathbb{R}^d.
$$
\n(116)

Denote by

$$
\mathscr{Y}_d := \{ (\sigma_k)_{k \in \mathbb{Z}^d} : (\sigma_k)_{k \in \mathbb{Z}^d} \text{ satisfies (115)} \text{–}(116) \}.
$$

Let  $(\sigma_k)_{k \in \mathbb{Z}^d} \in \mathcal{Y}_d$ , and define the frequency-uniform decomposition operators

$$
\Box_k := \mathscr{F}^{-1} \sigma_k \mathscr{F},\tag{117}
$$

where by  $\mathscr F$  we denote the Fourier transform on  $\mathbb R^d$ , then we define the modulation spaces  $M_{p,q}^s(\mathbb{R}^d)$  via the following norm,

$$
\|f\|_{M_{p,q}^s(\mathbb{R}^d)} := \left(\sum_{k \in \mathbb{Z}^d} \langle k \rangle^{sq} \|\Box_k f\|_p^q\right)^{1/q}, \quad s \in \mathbb{R}, 0 < p, q < +\infty. \tag{118}
$$

<span id="page-28-2"></span>Actually, in our application we will always be interested in the spaces  $M_{p,1}^s(\mathbb{R}^d)$  with  $s \in \mathbb{R}$ and  $p > 1$ . We just mention some properties of modulation spaces.

**Proposition 6** *Let s*, *s*<sub>1</sub>, *s*<sub>2</sub>  $\in \mathbb{R}$  *and*  $1 < p$ , *p*<sub>1</sub>, *p*<sub>2</sub>  $< +\infty$ *.* 

I

1.  $M_{p,1}^s(\mathbb{R}^d)$  *is a Banach space;* 2.  $\mathscr{S}(\mathbb{R}^d) \subset M_{p,1}^s(\mathbb{R}^d) \subset \mathscr{S}'(\mathbb{R}^d);$ 3.  $\mathscr{S}(\mathbb{R}^d)$  *is dense in*  $M_{p,1}^s(\mathbb{R}^d)$ *;* 4. *if*  $s_2 \leq s_1$  *and*  $p_1 \leq p_2$ *, then*  $M_{p_1,1}^{s_1} \subseteq M_{p_2,1}^{s_2}$ ; 5.  $M_{p,1}^0(\mathbb{R}^d) \subseteq L^\infty(\mathbb{R}^d) \cap L^p(\mathbb{R}^d)$ ; 6. *let*  $\tau(p) = max(0, d(1 - 1/p), d/p)$  *and*  $s_1 > s_2 + \tau(p)$ *, then*  $W^{s_1, p}(\mathbb{R}^d) \subset M_{p,1}^{s_2}(\mathbb{R}^d)$ ; 7. *let*  $s_1 \geq s_2$ , then  $M_{p,1}^{s_1}(\mathbb{R}^d) \subset W^{s_2,p}(\mathbb{R}^d)$ .

The last two properties are not trivial and have been proved in [\[32\]](#page-68-20).

We also introduce other spaces which are often used in this context: the anisotropic Lebesgue space  $L_{x_i;(x_j)_{j\neq i},t}^{p_1,p_2}$ ,

$$
\|f\|_{L^{p_1,p_2}_{x_i;(x_j)_{j\neq i},l}} := \left\| \|f\|_{L^{p_2}_{x_1,\ldots,x_{i-1},x_{i+1},\ldots,x_d,l}(\mathbb{R}^{d-1}\times I)} \right\|_{L^{p_1}_{x_i}(\mathbb{R})},
$$

 $\circled{2}$  Springer

and, for any Banach space *X*, the spaces  $l_{\square}^{1,s}$  $\bigcup_{i=1}^{n} (X)$  and  $l_{\square}^{1,s}$  $\Box_{,i}^{1,s}(X),$ 

$$
||f||_{l_{\square}^{1,s}(X)} := \sum_{k \in \mathbb{Z}^d} \langle k \rangle^s ||\square_k f||_X, \qquad (119)
$$
  

$$
||f||_{l_{\square,i,c}^{1,s}(X)} := \sum_{k \in \mathbb{Z}^d_i} \langle k \rangle^s ||\square_k f||_X, \quad \mathbb{Z}^d_i := \left\{ k \in \mathbb{Z}^d : |k_i| = \max_{1 \le j \le d} |k_j|, |k_i| > c \right\}.
$$
  
(120)

<span id="page-29-1"></span>For simplicity, we write  $l_{\Box}^{1}(X) = l_{\Box}^{1,0}$  $\bigcup_{i=1}^{n} (X)$  and  $M_{p,1}^s = M_{p,1}^s(\mathbb{R}^d)$ .

**Proposition 7** *Let*  $d \ge 2$ *,*  $m \ge 2$ *,*  $m > 4r/d$  *and*  $s > 2(r - 1) + 1/m$ *.* 

- (i) *There exist*  $c_0 > 1$  *and*  $\delta_0 = \delta_0(d, m, r) > 0$  *such that for any*  $c \geq c_0$ *, for any*  $\delta > \delta_0$  *and for any*  $\psi_0 \in M_{2,1}^s$  *with*  $\|\psi_0\|_{M_{2,1}^s} \leq c^{-\delta}$  *Eq.* [\(112\)](#page-27-1) *admits a unique solution*  $\psi \in C(I, M_{2,1}^s) \cap D$ *, where*  $T = T(\|\psi_0\|_{M_{2,1}^s}) = \mathcal{O}(c^{2(r-1)})$ *, and*  $\|\psi\|_D =$ 2( *r*−1)  $\alpha = 0$  $\sum$ *d i*,*l*=1  $\|\partial_{x_l}^\alpha \psi\|_{l_{\square,i,c}^{1,s-r+1/2}(L_{x_i;(x_j)_{j\neq i},t}^{\infty,2})\cap l_{\square}^{1,s}(L_{x_i;(x_j)_{j\neq i},t}^{m,\infty})\cap l_{\square}^{1,s+1/m}(L_{t}^\infty L_{x}^2\cap L_{t,x}^{2+m})\ \lesssim\ c^{-\delta}.$ (121)
- (ii) *Moreover, if*  $s \geq s_0(d) := d + 2 + \frac{1}{2}$ *, then there exists*  $\delta_1 = \delta_1(d, m, r) > 0$  *such that for any*  $c \ge c_0$ *, for any*  $\delta > \delta_1$  *and for any*  $\psi_0 \in M_{2,1}^s$  *with*  $\|\psi_0\|_{M_{2,1}^s} \le c^{-\delta} E q$ .[\(112\)](#page-27-1) *admits a unique solution*  $\psi \in C(I, H^s)$ *, where*  $T = T(\|\psi_0\|_{M^s_{2,1}}) = \mathcal{O}(c^{2(r-1)})$ *, and*

<span id="page-29-0"></span> $\|\psi(t)\|_{H^s} \lesssim c^{-\delta}, \quad |t| \lesssim c^{2(r-1)}$  $(122)$ 

<span id="page-29-2"></span>From the above proposition and from the embedding  $H^{s+\sigma+d/2} \subset M^s_{2,1}$  for any  $\sigma > 0$ we can deduce

**Corollary 1** *Let*  $d \ge 2$ *,*  $l \ge 2$ *,*  $r < \frac{d}{2}(l-1)$  *and*  $s > 2(r-1) + \frac{1}{2^{(l-1)}}$ *. Then there exist*  $c_0 > 1$ ,  $\delta_0 = \delta_0(d, l, r) > 0$  and  $\delta_1 = \delta_1(d, l, r) > 0$  such that for any  $c \ge c_0$ , for any  $\delta$  > max( $\delta_0$ ,  $\delta_1$ )*, for any*  $\sigma$  > 0 *and for any*  $\psi_0 \in H^{s+\sigma+d/2}$  *with*  $\|\psi_0\|_{H^{s+\sigma+d/2}} \leq c^{-\delta}$ *the normal form equation for* [\(56\)](#page-18-1) *admits a unique solution*  $\psi \in C([0, T], H^{s+\sigma+d/2}) \cap D$ , *where*  $T = T(\|\psi_0\|_{H^{s+\sigma+d/2}}) = \mathcal{O}(c^{2(r-1)})$ , and [\(121\)](#page-29-0) *holds. Furthermore, we have that*  $\psi \in L^{\infty}(I)H^{s+\sigma+d/2}(\mathbb{R}^d)$ *, and* 

$$
\|\psi(t)\|_{H^{s+\sigma+d/2}} \lesssim c^{-\delta}, \quad |t| \lesssim c^{2(r-1)}.
$$
 (123)

Since the nonlinearity in Eq. [\(112\)](#page-27-1) involves derivatives, this could cause a loss of derivatives as long as we rely only on energy estimates, on dispersive estimates or on Strichartz estimates. In order to overcome such a problem, we study the time decay of the operator  $\mathcal{U}_r(t) := e^{itA_{c,r}}$ , its local smoothing property, Strichartz estimates with  $\Box_k$ -decomposition and maximal function estimates in the framework of frequency-uniform localization.

The rest of this subsection is devoted to the proof of Proposition [7.](#page-29-1) For convenience, we will always use the following function sequence  $(\sigma_k)_{k \in \mathbb{Z}^d}$  to define modulation spaces.

**Lemma 5** *Let*  $(η<sub>k</sub>)<sub>k∈ℤ</sub> ∈ ℬ<sub>1</sub>$ *, and assume that supp* $(η<sub>k</sub>) ⊂ [k − 2/3, k + 2/3]$ *. Consider* 

$$
\sigma_k(\xi) := \eta_{k_1}(\xi_1) \dots \eta_{k_d}(\xi_d), \quad k = (k_1, \dots, k_d) \in \mathbb{Z}^d,
$$
\n(124)

*then*  $(\sigma_k)_{k \in \mathbb{Z}^d} \in \mathcal{Y}_d$ *.* 

 $\overline{\phantom{a}}$ 

For convenience, we also write

$$
\tilde{\sigma}\sigma_k = \sum_{\|l\|_{\infty} \le 1} \sigma_{k+l}, \ \tilde{\sigma}\Box_k = \sum_{\|l\|_{\infty} \le 1} \Box_{k+l}, \ k \in \mathbb{Z}^d,
$$
\n(125)

and one can check that

<span id="page-30-3"></span>
$$
\tilde{\sigma}\sigma_k\sigma_k = \sigma_k, \ \tilde{\sigma}\Box_k \circ \Box_k = \Box_k, \ k \in \mathbb{Z}^d. \tag{126}
$$

We also write  $\mathcal{A}_r f(t, x) := \int_0^t \mathcal{U}_r(t - \tau) f(\tau, x) d\tau$ .

#### <span id="page-30-2"></span>**8.2.1 Time decay**

Now, the time decay of the operator  $\mathcal{U}_r(t)$  is known (see [\(106\)](#page-26-3)), but now we are interested in its frequency-localized version, and we want to consider lower, medium and higher frequency separately. For simplicity we discuss the case  $r = 2$ , and we defer to the end of this section a remark about the case *r* > 2. So, consider

$$
\mathscr{U}_2(t) = e^{itA_{c,2}} = e^{ic^2t} \mathscr{F}^{-1} e^{it \left(|\xi|^2 - \frac{|\xi|^4}{c^2}\right)} \mathscr{F},
$$

and write  $\varepsilon = c^{-2}$ . It is known that the time decay of  $\mathcal{U}_2(t)$  is determined by the critical points of  $P_2(|\xi|) = |\xi|^2 - \varepsilon |\xi|^4$ . Notice that  $P'_{2}(R) = 4R(\varepsilon^{1/2}R + \frac{1}{\sqrt{\varepsilon}})$  $\overline{z}$ )( $\epsilon^{1/2}R-\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$  $\frac{1}{2}$ the singular points of  $P_2$  are  $\xi = 0$  and the points of the sphere  $\xi = (2\varepsilon)^{-1/2}$ . To handle these points, we exploit Littlewood–Paley decomposition, van der Corput lemma and some properties of the Fourier transform of radial functions.

Indeed, it is known that the Fourier transform of a radial function *f* is radial,

$$
\mathscr{F}f(\xi) = 2\pi \int_0^\infty f(R)R^{d-1}(R|\xi|)^{-(d-2)/2}J_{\frac{d-2}{2}}(R|\xi|)dR,
$$

where  $J_m$  is the order  $m$  Bessel function,

$$
J_m(R) = \frac{(R/2)^m}{\Gamma(m+1/2)\pi^{1/2}} \int_{-1}^1 e^{iRt} (1-t^2)^{m-1/2} dt, \quad m > -1/2.
$$

By following the computations in [\[50](#page-69-6)] we obtain that

<span id="page-30-1"></span><span id="page-30-0"></span>
$$
\mathcal{F}f(s) = K_d \pi \int_0^{\infty} f(R)R^{d-1}e^{-iRs}\bar{h}(Rs) dR
$$
  
+  $K_d \pi \int_0^{\infty} f(R)R^{d-1}e^{iRs}h(Rs) dR$ ,  $K_d > 0$ , (127)

$$
|h^{(k)}(R)| \le K_d (1+R)^{-\frac{d-1}{2}-k}, \quad \forall k \ge 0.
$$
 (128)

Now we make a Littlewood–Paley decomposition of the frequencies: Choose  $\rho$  a smooth cutoff function equal to 1 in the unit ball and equal to 0 outside the ball of radius 2, write  $\phi_0 = \rho(\cdot) - \rho(2\cdot), \phi_j(\cdot) = \mathscr{F}^{-1}\phi_0(2^{-j}\cdot)\mathscr{F}, j \in \mathbb{Z}$ , and consider

$$
\mathcal{U}_2(t)\psi_0 = \sum_{|j| \le K} \phi_j(D)\mathcal{U}_2(t)\psi_0 + \sum_{j < -K} \phi_j(D)\mathcal{U}_2(t)\psi_0 + \sum_{j > K} \phi_j(D)\mathcal{U}_2(t)\psi_0
$$
\n
$$
=: P = \mathcal{U}_2(t)\psi_0 + P < \mathcal{U}_2(t)\psi_0 + P > \mathcal{U}_2(t)\psi_0,\tag{129}
$$

where

<span id="page-31-1"></span><span id="page-31-0"></span>
$$
K := K(\varepsilon) = 10 - \frac{1}{2} \lceil \log_2 \varepsilon \rceil. \tag{130}
$$

Notice that the singular point  $R = 0$  is in the support set of  $\mathcal{F}(P = \mathcal{U}_2(t)\psi_0)$ . Roughly speaking, if  $j < -K$ , the dominant term in  $P_2(R)$  is  $R^2$ , while if  $j > K$  the dominant term in  $P_2(R)$  is  $\epsilon R^4$ ; hence, by [\(106\)](#page-26-3)

$$
||P_{<} \mathscr{U}_2(t)\psi_0||_{L^\infty} \lesssim |t|^{-d/2} ||\psi_0||_{L^1},\tag{131}
$$

$$
||P_{>}\mathscr{U}_2(t)\psi_0||_{L^{\infty}} \lesssim c^{d/2}|t|^{-d/4} ||\psi_0||_{L^1}, \quad 0 < |t| \lesssim c^2.
$$
 (132)

The time decay estimate for  $P = \mathcal{U}_2(t)\psi_0$  is more difficult, since  $P_2(R)$  has a singular point in  $R = R_1 := (2\varepsilon)^{-1/2}$ , which corresponds to the sphere  $|\xi| = R_1$  in the support set of  $\mathcal{F}(P = \mathcal{U}_2(t)\psi_0)$ . We notice that also the point that satisfies  $P_2''(R) = 0$ ,  $R = (6\varepsilon)^{-1/2}$ , corresponds to a sphere  $\xi = R_2$  contained in the support set of  $\mathscr{F}(P = \mathscr{U}_2(t)\psi_0)$ ; we shall use this fact later.

In order to handle the singular point  $R_1$ , we perform another decomposition around the sphere  $|\xi| = R_1$ . Denote  $\tilde{\sigma} \rho(\cdot) = \rho(2^{-K} \cdot) - \rho(2^{(K+1)} \cdot)$ , then  $P_{\pm} = \mathscr{F}^{-1} \tilde{\sigma} \rho \mathscr{F}$ ; write  $P_k = \mathscr{F}^{-1} \phi_k(|\xi| - R_1) \mathscr{F}$ , we get

$$
\sum_{|j| \le K} \phi_j(D)\mathcal{U}_2(t)\psi_0 = \sum_{k \in \mathbb{Z}} P = P_k \mathcal{U}_2(t)\psi_0
$$
\n(133)

By Young's inequality

$$
||P = P_k \mathscr{U}_2(t)\psi_0||_{L^\infty} \lesssim ||\mathscr{F}^{-1}\left(\tilde{\sigma}\rho\phi_k(|\xi| - R_1)e^{-itP_2(|\xi|)}\right)||_{L^\infty} ||\psi_0||_{L^1}.
$$
 (134)

Moreover,

$$
\mathcal{F}^{-1}(\tilde{\sigma}\rho\phi_k(|\xi|-R_1)e^{-itP_2(|\xi|)})
$$
  
\n
$$
\stackrel{(127)}{=} K_d\pi \int_0^\infty R^{d-1}\tilde{\sigma}\rho(R)\phi_k(R-R_1)e^{-itP_2(R)-iR|x|}\bar{h}(R|x|)dR
$$
  
\n
$$
+ K_d\pi \int_0^\infty R^{d-1}\tilde{\sigma}\rho(R)\phi_k(R-R_1)e^{-itP_2(R)+iR|x|}h(R|x|)dR
$$
  
\n
$$
=: A_k(|x|) + B_k(|x|).
$$

In order to estimate  $A_k(s)$  we rewrite it as

$$
A_k(s) = K_d \pi \left( \int_{R_1}^{\infty} + \int_0^{R_1} \right) R^{d-1} \tilde{\sigma} \rho(R) \phi_k(R - R_1) e^{-itP_2(R) - iRs} \bar{h}(Rs) dR \qquad (135)
$$
  
=:  $A_k^{(1)}(s) + A_k^{(2)}(s)$ . (136)

We begin by estimating  $A_k^{(1)}$ : Notice that  $A_k^{(1)}(s)$  for  $k > K + 2$ ; hence, we can assume that  $k \leq K + 2$ . By a change of variables we obtain

$$
A_k^{(1)}(s) \xrightarrow{R=R_{\pm}+2^k \sigma} 2^k K_d \pi e^{-iR_{1s}} \int_{1/2}^2 F(\sigma) e^{it2^{2k} \tilde{\sigma} P_2(\sigma)} d\sigma,
$$
  
\n
$$
F(\sigma) := (R_1 + 2^k \sigma)^{d-1} \tilde{\sigma} \rho (R_1 + 2^k \sigma) \phi_0(\sigma) \bar{h} ((R_1 + 2^k \sigma)s),
$$
  
\n
$$
\tilde{\sigma} P_2(\sigma) := (2^{2k} t)^{-1} (t P_2(R_1 + 2^k \sigma) - 2^k \sigma s).
$$

 $\circledcirc$  Springer

One can check that

$$
|\tilde{\sigma} P_2'(\sigma)| = \left| 4(R_1 + 2^k \sigma) (2R_1 + 2^k \sigma) \sigma \varepsilon - \frac{s}{t 2^k} \right|.
$$

Let  $s \gg 1$ ; if  $s \ll 2^k t/\varepsilon$ , then

$$
|F^{(m)}(\sigma)| \lesssim 1, \quad \forall m \ge 1, \quad |\tilde{\sigma} P_2'(\sigma)| \lesssim \varepsilon, \quad |\tilde{\sigma} P_2''(\sigma)|
$$
  

$$
\lesssim \varepsilon^{1/2}, \quad |\tilde{\sigma} P_2'''(\sigma)| \lesssim \varepsilon, \quad |\tilde{\sigma} P_2^{(m)}(\sigma)| \lesssim 1, \quad \forall m \ge 4
$$

while for  $s \gg 2^k t/\varepsilon$ 

$$
|F^{(m)}(\sigma)| \lesssim 1, \quad \forall m \ge 1, \quad |\tilde{\sigma} P_2^{(m)}(\sigma)| \lesssim 1, \quad \forall m \ge 1.
$$

Integrating by parts we get

$$
A_k^{(1)}(s)
$$
  
=  $2^k (2^{2k} t)^{-N} K_d \pi e^{iR_1 s} \int_{1/2}^2 e^{i t 2^{2k} \tilde{\sigma} P_2(\sigma)} \frac{d}{d\sigma} \left( \frac{1}{\tilde{\sigma} P_2'(\sigma)} \cdots \frac{d}{d\sigma} \left( \frac{1}{\tilde{\sigma} P_2'(\sigma)} \frac{d}{d\sigma} \left( \frac{F(\sigma)}{\tilde{\sigma} P_2'(\sigma)} \right) \right) \right) d\sigma.$ 

Therefore,

$$
|A_k^{(1)}(s)| \lesssim 2^k (2^{2k} t)^{-N}.
$$
 (137)

If  $s \sim 2^k t/\varepsilon$ , we apply van der Corput lemma,

$$
|A_k^{(1)}(s)| \lesssim 2^k (2^{2k} t)^{-1/2} \int_{1/2}^2 |\partial_{\sigma} F(\sigma)| d\sigma
$$
  

$$
\lesssim \frac{(128)}{2} 2^k (2^{2k} t)^{-1/2} s^{-(d-1)/2} \lesssim 2^k (2^{2k} t)^{-d/2} \varepsilon^{(d-1)/2}.
$$

Moreover, we can check that  $|A_k^{(1)}(s)| \lesssim 2^k$ ; hence, for  $s \gg 1$ 

$$
|A_k^{(1)}(s)| \lesssim \frac{\varepsilon \le 1}{\lesssim} 2^k \min(1, (2^{2k} t)^{-d/2}). \tag{138}
$$

If  $s \lesssim 1$ , we rewrite  $A_k^{(1)}$  in the following form

$$
A_k^{(1)}(s) = 2^k K_d \pi e^{-iR_1 s} \int_{1/2}^2 F_1(\sigma) e^{itP_2(R_1 + 2^k \sigma)} d\sigma,
$$
  

$$
F_1(\sigma) := (R_1 + 2^k \sigma)^{d-1} \tilde{\sigma} \rho(R_1 + 2^k \sigma) \phi_0(\sigma) \bar{h}((R_1 + 2^k \sigma)s) e^{-i2^k \sigma s}.
$$

Again integrating by parts, we obtain

$$
|A_k^{(1)}(s)| \lesssim 2^k \min(1, (2^{2k}t)^{-d/2}). \tag{139}
$$

Now we estimate  $A_k^{(2)}$ . We notice that  $R_2 \in \text{supp}(\phi_k(R_1 - \cdot))$  if and only if  $k \in \{-2, -1\}$ ; when  $k \notin \{-2, -1\}$ , one can repeat the above argument and show that

$$
|A_k^{(2)}(s)| \lesssim 2^k \min(1, (2^{2k}t)^{-d/2}). \tag{140}
$$

Let  $k \in \{-2, -1\}$ . If *s*  $\lt t$  or *s*  $\gt t$  we have by integration by parts that

$$
|A_k^{(2)}(s)| \lesssim \min(1, t^{-N}), \quad \forall N \in \mathbb{N}.
$$

<span id="page-32-0"></span> $\hat{2}$  Springer

On the other hand, if *s* ∼ *t* we can use van der Corput lemma and obtain

$$
|A_k^{(2)}(s)| \lesssim t^{-1/3} s^{-(d-1)/2} \lesssim t^{-\frac{d}{2} + \frac{1}{6}}.
$$

Therefore, for  $k \in \{-2, -1\}$  we have

<span id="page-33-0"></span>
$$
|A_k^{(2)}(s)| \lesssim \min\left(1, t^{-\frac{d}{2} + \frac{1}{6}}\right). \tag{141}
$$

Combining [\(140\)](#page-32-0) and [\(141\)](#page-33-0) we can deduce that

$$
|A_k^{(2)}(s)| \lesssim 2^k \min\left(1, \left(2^{2k} t\right)^{-\frac{d}{2} + \frac{1}{6}}\right). \tag{142}
$$

If we sum up all the  $A_k$  for  $k \leq K + 2$  we finally conclude that for any  $d \geq 2$ 

$$
||P = \mathscr{U}_2(t)\psi_0||_{L^\infty} \lesssim c \min(|t|^{-d/2}, |t|^{-d/2+1/6}) ||\psi_0||_{L^1}.
$$
 (143)

*Remark 18* In the general case  $r > 2$ , we have to determine critical points for the polynomial

$$
P_r(R) = \sum_{j=1}^r (-1)^{j+1} \varepsilon^{j-1} R^{2j},
$$
\n(144)

namely the roots of the polynomial

$$
P'_{r}(R) = \sum_{j=1}^{r} (-1)^{j+1} \varepsilon^{j-1} 2j R^{2j-1} = R \left( \sum_{j=1}^{r} (-1)^{j+1} \varepsilon^{j-1} 2j R^{2(j-1)} \right). \tag{145}
$$

Besides the trivial value  $R = 0$ , which we deal as in the case  $r = 2$ , one should rely on lower and upper bounds to determine the other (if any) real roots. For a lower bound, we rely on a well-known corollary of Rouché theorem from complex analysis, and we obtain that the other roots satisfy

$$
R \ge \frac{2}{\max\left(2, \sum_{j=1}^{r} 2j\varepsilon^{j-1}\right)}
$$
  
 
$$
\ge \frac{2}{\max\left(2, 2r\sum_{j=0}^{r-1} \varepsilon^{j}\right)}
$$
  
 
$$
\ge \frac{\varepsilon \le 1/2}{\max(2, 4r\varepsilon)} \ge \frac{\varepsilon \ll 1/(2r)}{2} 1.
$$

For what concerns an upper bound, we exploit an old result by Fujiwara [\[24](#page-68-21)], and we get that the roots satisfy

$$
R \le \max_{1 \le j \le r-1} \left( 2(r-1) \frac{2j \varepsilon^{j-1}}{2r \varepsilon^{r-1}} \right)^{\frac{1}{2(j-1)}}
$$
  
 
$$
\le 2(r-1) \max_{1 \le j \le r-1} \left( \frac{j}{r} \right)^{\frac{1}{2(j-1)}} \varepsilon^{\frac{j-r}{2(j-1)}}
$$
  
 
$$
\stackrel{\varepsilon \le 1}{\le} K_r \varepsilon^{-1/2}
$$

for some  $K_r > 0$ .

Hence, in the case  $r > 2$ , if  $\varepsilon$  sufficiently small (depending on *r*), then the polynomial  $P'$ <sub>r</sub> has critical points (apart from 0) which have modulus between 1 and  $\mathcal{O}(\varepsilon^{-1/2})$  (a similar

argument works also for the polynomial  $P_r^{\prime\prime}$ , and this affects the medium-frequency decay of  $\mathcal{U}_r(t)$ . In any case, we can deal with this problem as in the case  $r = 2$ , and we get

$$
||P_{<} \mathscr{U}_r(t)\psi_0||_{L^\infty} \lesssim |t|^{-d/2} ||\psi_0||_{L^1},
$$
\n(146)

$$
||P = \mathscr{U}_r(t)\psi_0||_{L^\infty} \lesssim c \min(|t|^{-d/2}, |t|^{-d/2+1/6}) ||\psi_0||_{L^1},
$$
\n(147)

$$
||P_{>}\mathscr{U}_r(t)\psi_0||_{L^{\infty}} \lesssim c^{d/2}|t|^{-\frac{d}{2r}}||\psi_0||_{L^1}, \ 0 < |t| \lesssim c^{2(r-1)}.
$$
 (148)

#### **8.2.2 Smoothing estimates**

As already pointed out, one needs smoothing estimates to ensure the well-posedness of Eq. [\(112\)](#page-27-1) because of the presence of derivatives in the nonlinearity. Again, we first consider the case  $r = 2$ , and then we mention the results for  $r > 2$ .

**Proposition 8** *For any*  $k = (k_1, \ldots, k_d) \in \mathbb{Z}^d$  *with*  $|k_i| = |k|_{\infty}$  *and*  $|k_i| \geq c$ 

<span id="page-34-1"></span>
$$
\left\| \Box_k D_{x_i}^{3/2} \mathscr{U}_2(t) \psi_0 \right\|_{L_{x_i; (x_j)_{j \neq i}, t}^{\infty, 2}} \lesssim c \|\Box_k \psi_0\|_{L^2}.
$$
 (149)

*Proof* It suffices to consider the case  $i = 1$ . For convenience, we write  $\overline{z} = (z_1, \ldots, z_d)$ . Then,

$$
\left\|\Box_k D_{x_i}^{3/2} \mathscr{U}_2(t)\psi_0\right\|_{L_{x_i;(x_j)_{j\neq i},t}^{\infty,2}} = \left\|\int \sigma_k(\xi) |\xi_1|^{3/2} e^{itP_2(|\xi|)} \mathscr{F}(\psi_0)(\xi) e^{ix_1\xi_1} d\xi_1\right\|_{L_{x_1}^{\infty} L_{\xi,t}^2}
$$
  

$$
\lesssim \left\|\int \eta_{k_1}(\xi_1) |\xi_1|^{3/2} e^{itP_2(|\xi|)} \mathscr{F}(\psi_0)(\xi) e^{ix_1\xi_1} d\xi_1\right\|_{L_{x_1}^{\infty} L_{\xi,t}^2} =: L.
$$

Now, we estimate *L*: If  $k_1 \geq c$ , then  $\xi_1 > 0$  for  $\xi \in \text{supp}(\eta_{k_1})$ . Hence, by changing variable,  $\theta = P_2(|\xi|)$ , we get

$$
L \lesssim \left\| \int \eta_{k_1}(\xi_1(\theta))\xi_1(\theta)^{3/2} e^{it\theta} \mathscr{F}(\psi_0)(\xi(\theta)) e^{ix_1\xi_1(\theta)} \frac{1}{2} \xi_1^{-1}(\theta) \left( 2 \frac{|\xi|^2}{c^2} - 1 \right)^{-1} \right\|_{L_{\eta_1}^{\infty} L_{\xi, t}^2}
$$
  

$$
\lesssim \left\| \eta_{k_1}(\xi_1(\theta))\xi_1(\theta)^{1/2} \mathscr{F}(\psi_0)(\xi(\theta)) \left( 2 \frac{|\xi|^2}{c^2} - 1 \right)^{-1} \right\|_{L_{\theta}^2 L_{\xi}^2}
$$
  

$$
\lesssim \left\| \eta_{k_1}(\xi_1)\xi_1^{1/2} \mathscr{F}(\psi_0)(\xi) \left( 2 \frac{|\xi|^2}{c^2} - 1 \right)^{-1} \left( 2 \frac{|\xi|^2}{c^2} - 1 \right)^{1/2} \xi_1^{1/2} \right\|_{L_{\xi}^2}
$$
  

$$
= \left\| \eta_{k_1}(\xi_1)\xi_1 \mathscr{F}(\psi_0)(\xi) \left( 2 \frac{|\xi|^2}{c^2} - 1 \right)^{-1/2} \right\|_{L_{\xi}^2} \lesssim c \|\psi_0\|_{L^2}.
$$

The proof for the case  $k_1 \lesssim -c$  is similar.

By duality we have the following

**Proposition 9** For any 
$$
k = (k_1, ..., k_d) \in \mathbb{Z}^d
$$
 with  $|k_i| = |k|_{\infty}$  and  $|k_i| \gtrsim c$   

$$
\left\| \Box_k \partial_{x_i}^2 \mathscr{A}_2 f \right\|_{L_i^{\infty} L_x^2} \lesssim c \|\Box_k D_i^{1/2} f\|_{L_{x_i; (x_j)_{j \neq i}}^{1, 2}}.
$$
 (150)

<span id="page-34-0"></span>

Now consider the inhomogeneous Cauchy problem

<span id="page-35-1"></span>
$$
-i\psi_t = A_{c,2}\psi + f(t, x), \quad \psi(0, x) = 0.
$$
 (151)

**Proposition 10** *For any*  $k = (k_1, \ldots, k_d) \in \mathbb{Z}^d$  *with*  $|k_i| = |k| \infty$  *and*  $|k_i| \geq c$ 

<span id="page-35-2"></span>
$$
\left\| \Box_k \partial_{x_i}^2 \psi \right\|_{L^{\infty, 2}_{x_i; (x_j)_{j \neq i}, t}} \lesssim \|\Box_k f\|_{L^{1, 2}_{x_i; (x_j)_{j \neq i}, t}}.
$$
 (152)

*Proof* It suffices to consider  $i = 1$ . We write

$$
\psi = \mathscr{F}_{\tau,\xi}^{-1} \frac{1}{\tau - c^2 - P_2(|\xi|)} (\mathscr{F}_{t,x} f)(\tau,\xi).
$$

We have

$$
\partial_{x_i}^2 \psi = \mathscr{F}_{\tau,\xi}^{-1} \frac{\xi_1^2}{P_2(|\xi|) + c^2 - \tau} \mathscr{F}_{t,x} f. \tag{153}
$$

We want to show that

$$
\left\|\mathscr{F}_{\tau,\xi}^{-1}\frac{\eta_{k_1}(\xi_1)\xi_1^2}{P_2(|\xi|)+c^2-\tau}\mathscr{F}_{t,x}f\right\|_{L_{x_1}^{\infty}L_{\xi,t}^2}\lesssim\left\|\mathscr{F}_{\xi_1}^{-1}\eta_{k_1}(\xi_1)\mathscr{F}_{x_1}f\right\|_{L_{x_1}^1L_{\xi,t}^2},
$$

which, by Young's inequality, is equivalent to show that

<span id="page-35-0"></span>
$$
\sup_{x_1, \tau, \xi_j} \left| \mathcal{F}_{\xi_1}^{-1} \frac{\sigma_k(\xi) \xi_1^2}{P_2(|\xi|) + c^2 - \tau} \right| \lesssim 1. \tag{154}
$$

We prove [\(154\)](#page-35-0): First, notice that when  $|k_1|=|k|_{\infty}$ , then  $|\xi_1| \sim |\xi|_{\infty}$  for  $\xi \in \text{supp}(\sigma_k)$ . We split the argument according to the cases  $\tau - c^2 > 0$  and  $\tau - c^2 \le 0$ . In the case  $\tau - c^2 > 0$ 

$$
\sup_{x_1, \tau, \xi_j} \left| \mathscr{F}_{\xi_1}^{-1} \frac{\sigma_k(\xi) \xi_1^2}{P_2(|\xi|) + c^2 - \tau} \right| \lesssim \left| \int_{k_1 - 3/4}^{k_1 + 3/4} \frac{c^2}{\xi_1^2} d\xi_1 \right| \stackrel{|k_1| \gtrsim c}{\lesssim} 1.
$$

When  $\tau - c^2 \le 0$  we set  $\tau_2 := \tau_2(c) = c \left( \sqrt{\frac{5}{4}} - \frac{\tau}{c^2} - \frac{1}{2} \right) > 0$ , in order to write

$$
P_2(|\xi|) + c^2 - \tau = \left(\frac{|\xi|^2}{c} + \tau_2\right) \left(-\frac{|\xi|^2}{c} + \tau_2 + c\right).
$$

Hence

$$
\mathcal{F}_{\xi_1}^{-1} \frac{\sigma_k(\xi)\xi_1^2}{P_2(|\xi|) + c^2 - \tau} = \mathcal{F}_{\xi_1}^{-1} \frac{\sigma_k(\xi)\xi_1^2}{\left(\frac{|\xi|^2}{c} + \tau_2\right)\left(-\frac{|\xi|^2}{c} + \tau_2 + c\right)}
$$

$$
= \mathcal{F}_{\xi_1}^{-1} \frac{\sigma_k(\xi)\xi_1^2}{\left(\frac{\xi_1^2}{c} + \frac{|\xi|^2}{c} + \tau_2\right)\left(-\frac{\xi_1^2}{c} - \frac{|\xi|^2}{c} + \tau_2 + c\right)}.
$$
(155)

When  $|\bar{\xi}|^2 \geq c(\tau_2 + c)$ , we can treat the problem as before.

Next, we consider the case  $|\bar{\xi}|^2 < c(\tau_2 + c)$ . Let

$$
A^{2} := A(\bar{\xi}, \tau, c)^{2} = \frac{|\bar{\xi}|^{2}}{c} + \tau_{2},
$$
  

$$
B^{2} := B(\bar{\xi}, \tau, c)^{2} = -\left(\frac{|\bar{\xi}|^{2}}{c} - \tau_{2} - c\right),
$$

<sup>2</sup> Springer

then

$$
\mathcal{F}_{\xi_1}^{-1} \frac{\eta_{k_1}(\xi_1)\xi_1^2}{\left(\frac{|\xi|^2}{c} + \tau_2\right)\left(-\frac{|\xi|^2}{c} + \tau_2 + c\right)}
$$
\n
$$
= \mathcal{F}_{\xi_1}^{-1} \frac{\xi_1}{\frac{\xi_1^2}{c} + A^2} \frac{\xi_1}{B^2 - \frac{\xi_1^2}{c}} \eta_{k_1}(\xi_1)
$$
\n
$$
= \frac{c^{1/2}}{2} \mathcal{F}_{\xi_1}^{-1} \frac{\xi_1}{\frac{\xi_1^2}{c} + A^2} \left(\frac{1}{B - \frac{\xi_1}{c^{1/2}}} - \frac{1}{B + \frac{\xi_1}{c^{1/2}}}\right) \eta_{k_1}(\xi_1)
$$
\n
$$
=: I + II.
$$

We estimate only *I*, as the argument of *I I* is similar. First we write

 $\overline{8}$ 

 $\mathbf{u}$ 

$$
I = -\frac{c}{2}\mathscr{F}_{\xi_1}^{-1} \frac{\eta_{k_1}(\xi_1)}{\frac{\xi_1^2}{c} + A^2} + \frac{c}{2}\mathscr{F}_{\xi_1}^{-1} \frac{\eta_{k_1}(\xi_1)B}{\left(B - \frac{\xi_1}{c^{1/2}}\right)\left(\frac{\xi_1^2}{c} + A^2\right)} := I_1 + I_2.
$$

Since  $\mathcal{F}_{\xi_1}^{-1}(1/\xi_1)$  is the function  $sgn(\xi_1)$ , we have that *I*<sub>1</sub> is bounded uniformly with respect to  $c$ . For  $I_2$ , it suffices to show

 $\overline{1}$ 

$$
cB \sup_{x_1} \left| \mathscr{F}_{\xi_1}^{-1} \frac{1}{\left(B - \frac{\xi_1}{c^{1/2}}\right)\left(\frac{\xi_1^2}{c} + A^2\right)} \right| \lesssim 1.
$$

Since  $|\mathscr{F}(e^{-|\cdot|})(\xi)| \lesssim \frac{1}{1+|\xi|^2}$ ,

$$
\begin{split} \left.cB\left\| \mathscr{F}_{\xi_1}^{-1} \frac{1}{\left(B - \frac{\xi_1}{c^{1/2}}\right)\left(\frac{\xi_1^2}{c} + A^2\right)}\right\|_{L^\infty_{x_1}} &\lesssim cB\left\| \mathscr{F}_{\xi_1}^{-1} \frac{1}{B - \frac{\xi_1}{c^{1/2}}}\right\|_{L^\infty_{x_1}} \left\| \mathscr{F}_{\xi_1}^{-1} \frac{1}{\frac{\xi_1^2}{c} + A^2}\right\|_{L^1_{x_1}} \\ &\lesssim \frac{c^2B}{A^2}\left\| \mathscr{F}_{\xi_1}^{-1} \frac{1}{B - \frac{\xi_1}{c^{1/2}}}\right\|_{L^\infty_{x_1}} \left\| \mathscr{F}_{\xi_1}^{-1} \frac{1}{\xi_1^2A^{-2} + 1}\right\|_{L^1_{x_1}} \\ &\lesssim B\left\| \mathscr{F}_{\xi_1}^{-1} \frac{1}{B - \frac{\xi_1}{c^{1/2}}}\right\|_{L^\infty_{x_1}} \cdot \frac{c^2}{A^2}\left\| Ae^{-A|x_1|}\right\|_{L^1_{x_1}} \lesssim 1. \end{split}
$$

Finally, we observe that in general the solution  $\psi$  of [\(151\)](#page-35-1) may not vanish at  $t = 0$ . However, by Parseval's identity

$$
\psi(0, x) = \psi(t, x)|_{t=0} = K \int_I \mathscr{U}_2(s) \mathscr{F}(f)(s, x) \mathrm{d}s,
$$

for some  $K > 0$ , and if we combine it with [\(150\)](#page-34-0), we have that  $\Box_k \mathcal{U}_2(t) d_{x_1}^2 \psi(0, x) \in L^2$ . Hence, by [\(149\)](#page-34-1)

$$
\tilde{\sigma}\psi(t) := \psi(t) - \mathscr{U}_2(t)\psi(0,\cdot) = i \int_I \mathscr{U}_2(t-\tau)f(\tau)d\tau
$$
\n(156)

is the solution of  $(151)$ , and it satisfies [\(152\)](#page-35-2).

<sup>2</sup> Springer

**Lemma 6** *For any*  $\sigma \in \mathbb{R}$  *and*  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^d$  *with*  $|k_i| > 4$ *,* 

<span id="page-37-0"></span>
$$
\|\Box_k D_{x_i}^\sigma \psi\|_{L_{x_1:(x_j)_j\neq 1,l}^{p_1,p_2}} \lesssim \langle k_i \rangle^\sigma \|\Box_k \psi\|_{L_{x_1:(x_j)_j\neq 1,l}^{p_1,p_2}}.\tag{157}
$$

*If we replace*  $D_{x_i}^{\sigma}$  *by*  $\partial_{x_i}^{\sigma}$ *, the above inequality holds for all*  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^d$ *.* 

*Proof* See the proof of Lemma 3.4 in [\[58](#page-69-12)]. One can check that both sides of [\(157\)](#page-37-0) are equivalent for  $|k_i| > 4$ .

By combining  $(152)$ ,  $(150)$  and  $(157)$  we obtain

**Proposition 11** *For any*  $k = (k_1, \ldots, k_d) \in \mathbb{Z}^d$  *with*  $|k_i| = |k|_{\infty} \geq c$  *we have* 

$$
\left\| \Box_k \partial_{x_i}^2 \mathscr{A}_2 f \right\|_{L^{\infty, 2}_{x_i; (x_j)_{j \neq i}, t}} \lesssim \|\Box_k f\|_{L^{1, 2}_{x_i; (x_j)_{j \neq i}, t}}, \tag{158}
$$

<span id="page-37-2"></span><span id="page-37-1"></span>
$$
\left\| \Box_k \partial_{x_i}^2 \mathscr{A}_2 f \right\|_{L_t^{\infty} L_x^2} \lesssim c \left\langle |k_i| \right\rangle^{1/2} \left\| \Box_k f \right\|_{L_{x_i; (x_j)_{j \neq i}}^{1, 2}}.
$$
 (159)

*Remark 19* For the case  $r > 2$  we replace [\(149\)](#page-34-1), [\(150\)](#page-34-0), [\(152\)](#page-35-2), [\(158\)](#page-37-1) and [\(159\)](#page-37-2) with

$$
\left\| \Box_k D_{x_i}^{r-1/2} \mathscr{U}_r(t) \psi_0 \right\|_{L_{x_i;(x_j)_{j \neq i},r}^{\infty,2}} \lesssim c^{r-1} \|\Box_k \psi_0\|_{L^2},
$$
\n(160)

$$
\left\| \Box_k \partial_{x_i}^r \mathscr{A}_r f \right\|_{L_t^{\infty} L_x^2} \lesssim c^{r-1} \|\Box_k D_i^{1/2} f\|_{L_{x_i; (x_j)_{j \neq i}}^{1, 2}, \qquad (161)
$$

$$
\left\| \Box_k \partial_{x_i}^{2(r-1)} \psi \right\|_{L^{\infty,2}_{x_i;(x_j)_{j\neq i},t}} \lesssim \|\Box_k f\|_{L^{1,2}_{x_i;(x_j)_{j\neq i},t}}, \tag{162}
$$

$$
\left\| \Box_k \partial_{x_i}^{2(r-1)} \mathscr{A}_r f \right\|_{L^{\infty,2}_{x_i;(x_j)_{j \neq i}, t}} \lesssim \|\Box_k f\|_{L^{1,2}_{x_i;(x_j)_{j \neq i}, t}}, \tag{163}
$$

$$
\left\| \Box_k \partial_{x_i}^{2(r-1)} \mathscr{A}_r f \right\|_{L_t^{\infty} L_x^2} \lesssim c^{r-1} \left\langle |k_i| \right\rangle^{r-3/2} \|\Box_k f\|_{L_{x_i; (x_j)_{j \neq i}, t}^{1, 2}}.
$$
 (164)

*Remark 20* We point out the fact that we have worked out smoothing estimates only in the higher frequencies. As in [\[50\]](#page-69-6), only these smoothing estimates are needed in order to discuss the well-posedness of [\(112\)](#page-27-1).

## **8.2.3 Strichartz estimates**

By exploiting [\(110\)](#page-27-2) we can deduce Strichartz estimates for solutions of [\(112\)](#page-27-1) combined with  $\square_k$ -decomposition operators.

**Proposition 12** *Let*  $r \geq 1$ ,  $d \geq 2$ ,  $c \geq 1$ ,  $t > 0$ . *Let*  $(p, q)$  *and*  $(a, b)$  *be order-r admissible pairs. Then for any*  $0 < T \leq c^{2(r-1)}$  *and for any*  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^d$  *with*  $|k| \geq K$  ( $K = K(c)$  *is defined in* [\(130\)](#page-31-0)*)*

<span id="page-37-3"></span>
$$
\|\Box_k \mathscr{U}_r(t)\phi_0\|_{L^p([0,T])L^q(\mathbb{R}^d)} \lesssim c^{d\left(1-\frac{1}{r}\right)\left(\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{q}\right)} \|\Box_k \phi_0\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}
$$
  
=  $c^{\left(1-\frac{1}{r}\right)\frac{2r}{p}} \|\Box_k \phi_0\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)},$  (165)

$$
\left\| \Box_k \int_0^t \mathcal{U}_r(t-\tau) \phi(\tau) d\tau \right\|_{L^p([0,T])L^q(\mathbb{R}^d)} \lesssim c^{\left(1-\frac{1}{r}\right)2r\left(\frac{1}{p}+\frac{1}{a}\right)} \|\Box_k \phi\|_{L^{a'}([0,T])L^{b'}(\mathbb{R}^d)}.
$$
\n(166)

Furthermore, by [\(106\)](#page-26-3) we have that

$$
\|\Box_k \mathscr{U}_r(t)\|_{L^1\to L^\infty} \lesssim c^{d\left(1-\frac{1}{r}\right)} \langle t \rangle^{-d/(2r)}, \ 0<|t|\lesssim c^{2(r-1)},
$$

and by following closely the argument in Section 5 of [\[59\]](#page-69-13) we can deduce

**Proposition 13** *Let*  $r \geq 1$ ,  $d \geq 2$ ,  $c \geq 1$ *. Let*  $(p, q)$  *be a Schrödinger-admissible pair, then* 

<span id="page-38-7"></span>
$$
\|\mathscr{U}_r(t)\psi_0\|_{l_{\square}^{1,s}(L^p_t([0,T])L^q_x)} \lesssim c^{\left(1-\frac{1}{r}\right)\frac{2r}{p}} \|\psi_0\|_{M^s_{2,1}}, \ 0 < T \lesssim c^{2(r-1)}, \quad (167)
$$

$$
\|\mathscr{A}_r f\|_{l^{\frac{1}{\square}}_{\Box}(L^p_l([0,T])L^q_x)\cap l^{\frac{1}{\square}}_{\Box}(L^\infty_l([0,T])L^2_x)} \lesssim c^{\left(1-\frac{1}{r}\right)\frac{4r}{p}} \|f\|_{l^{\frac{1}{\square}}_{\Box}(L^{p'}([0,T])L^{q'}(\mathbb{R}^d))}.
$$
 (168)

# **8.2.4 Maximal function estimates**

In this subsection we study the maximal function estimates for the semigroup  $\mathcal{U}_r(t)$  and the integral operator  $\int_0^t \mathcal{U}_r(t-\tau) \cdot d\tau$  in anisotropic Lebesgue spaces. To do this, we will need the time decay properties proved in Sec. [8.2.1.](#page-30-2) As always, we first prove results for the case  $r = 2$ , and then we write the modification for the general case.

**Lemma 7** 1. Let 
$$
q \ge 2
$$
,  $\frac{8}{d} < q \le +\infty$  and  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^d$  with  $|k| \gtrsim K(c)$ , then  
\n
$$
\|\Box_k \mathscr{U}_2(t)\psi_0\|_{L^{q,\infty}_{x_i;(x_j)_{j\ne i},t}} \lesssim c^{d/2} \langle k \rangle^{1/q} \|\Box_k \psi_0\|_{L^2}, \ 0 < |t| \lesssim c^2, \ \forall i = 1, \ldots, d.
$$
\n(169)

2. Let 
$$
q \ge 2
$$
,  $\frac{4}{d} < q \le +\infty$  and  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^d$  with  $|k| \lesssim K(c)$ , then  
\n
$$
\|\Box_k \mathcal{U}_2(t)\psi_0\|_{L^{q,\infty}_{x_i:(x_j)_{j\neq i},I}} \lesssim c \langle k \rangle^{1/q} \|\Box_k \psi_0\|_{L^2}, \quad \forall i = 1,\ldots,d. \tag{170}
$$

*Proof* Clearly it suffices to show the thesis for  $i = 1$ ; recall that for any  $x = (x_1, \ldots, x_d)$  $\mathbb{R}^d$  we denote  $\bar{x} = (x_2, \ldots, x_d)$ . By a standard  $TT^*$  argument, [\(169\)](#page-38-0) is equivalent to

<span id="page-38-6"></span><span id="page-38-0"></span>
$$
\left\| \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} e^{i \langle x, \xi \rangle} e^{it (c^2 + P_2(\vert \xi \vert))} \sigma_k(\xi) \mathrm{d}\xi \right\|_{L^{q/2, \infty}_{x_1; \bar{x}, \ell}} \lesssim \langle k \rangle^{2/q} \,. \tag{171}
$$

If  $|k| \geq K(c)$ , then

$$
\|\mathcal{F}^{-1}e^{it(c^2+P_2(|\xi|))}\sigma_k(\xi)\|_{L_x^{\infty}} \lesssim c^{d/2} \langle k \rangle^{-d} |t|^{-d/4}, \ 0 < |t| \lesssim c^2; \qquad (172)
$$

on the other hand

$$
\|\Box_k \mathscr{U}_2(t)\mathscr{F}^{-1}\sigma_k\|_{L^\infty_{t,x}} \lesssim \|\Box_k \mathscr{U}_2(t)\mathscr{F}^{-1}\sigma_k\|_{L^\infty_t L^2_x} \lesssim 1. \tag{173}
$$

If we combine  $(172)$  and  $(173)$ , we obtain

$$
|\Box_k \mathscr{U}_2(t)\mathscr{F}^{-1}\sigma_k| \lesssim c^{d/2} (1 + \langle k \rangle^4 \, |t|)^{-d/4}, \ 0 < |t| \lesssim c^2. \tag{174}
$$

Now, if  $|x_1| \gtrsim 1 + |t| \langle k \rangle^5$ , by integrating by parts we get

<span id="page-38-5"></span><span id="page-38-4"></span><span id="page-38-3"></span><span id="page-38-2"></span><span id="page-38-1"></span>
$$
|\Box_k \mathscr{U}_2(t)\mathscr{F}^{-1}\sigma_k| \lesssim c^{d/2} \langle x_1 \rangle^{-2} \,. \tag{175}
$$

If  $|x_1| \lesssim 1 + |t| \langle k \rangle^5$ , by [\(174\)](#page-38-3) we can deduce

$$
|\Box_k \mathscr{U}_2(t)\mathscr{F}^{-1}\sigma_k| \lesssim c^{d/2} \left(1 + |x_1| \langle k \rangle^{-1}\right)^{-d/4} \tag{176}
$$

Combining [\(175\)](#page-38-4) and [\(176\)](#page-38-5) we have

$$
\sup_{\bar{x},t} |\Box_k \mathscr{U}_2(t)\mathscr{F}^{-1}\sigma_k| \lesssim c^{d/2} \langle x_1 \rangle^{-2} + c^{d/2} \left(1 + |x_1| \langle k \rangle^{-1}\right)^{-d/4}, \tag{177}
$$

from which, by taking the  $L_{x_1}^{q/2}$  norm on both sides, we obtain [\(171\)](#page-38-6). The proof for the case  $|k| \le K(c)$  is similar.  $|k| \lesssim K(c)$  is similar.

**Lemma 8** Let 
$$
q \ge 2
$$
,  $\frac{8}{d} < q \le +\infty$  and  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^d$  with  $|k_i| \gtrsim K(c)^2$ , then  
\n
$$
\|\Box_k \mathscr{A}_2 f\|_{L^{q,\infty}_{x_i;(x_j)_{j\ne i},t}} \lesssim c^{d/2} \langle k_i \rangle^{-3/2+1/q} \|\Box_k f\|_{L^{1,2}_{x_i;(x_j)_{j\ne i},t}}, \quad 0 < |t| \lesssim c^2, \quad \forall i = 1,\ldots,d.
$$
\n(178)

*Proof* It suffices to prove the case  $i = 1$ . Recall that the solution of [\(151\)](#page-35-1) is of the form

<span id="page-39-1"></span>
$$
\psi = \mathscr{F}_{\tau,\xi}^{-1} \frac{1}{c^2 + P_2(|\xi|) - \tau} \mathscr{F}_{t,x} f;
$$

hence, its frequency localization can be written as

$$
\Box_k \psi = \mathscr{F}^{-1}_{\tau,\xi} \frac{1}{c^2 + P_2(|\xi|) - \tau} (\mathscr{F}_{t,x} \Box_k f)(\tau,\xi).
$$

For convenience, we introduce the following regions

<span id="page-39-0"></span>
$$
\mathbb{E}_1 = \{ \tau - c^2 \le -c^2/4 \},
$$
  
\n
$$
\mathbb{E}_2 = \left\{ -c^2/4 \le \tau - c^2 \le |\bar{\xi}|^2 \left( -\frac{|\bar{\xi}|^2}{c^2} + 1 \right) \right\},
$$
  
\n
$$
\mathbb{E}_3 = \left\{ \tau - c^2 \ge |\bar{\xi}|^2 \left( -\frac{|\bar{\xi}|^2}{c^2} + 1 \right) \right\},
$$

and we make the following decomposition

$$
c^{2} + P_{2}(|\xi|) - \tau = \begin{cases} \left(\frac{|\xi|^{2}}{c} + \tau_{2}(c, \tau)\right) \left(-\frac{\xi_{1}}{c^{1/2}} + a\right) \left(\frac{\xi_{1}}{c^{1/2}} + a\right) & (\bar{\xi}, \tau) \in \mathbb{E}_{1},\\ \left(\frac{|\xi|^{2}}{c} + \tau_{2}(c, \tau)\right) \left(-\frac{|\xi|^{2}}{c} + \tau_{2}(c, \tau) + c\right), & (\bar{\xi}, \tau) \in \mathbb{E}_{2},\\ -\left(\frac{|\xi|^{2}}{c} - \frac{c}{2}\right)^{2} + \left(\frac{5}{4}c^{2} - \tau\right), & (\bar{\xi}, \tau) \in \mathbb{E}_{3}, \end{cases}
$$
(179)

where  $a = a(c, \bar{\xi}, \tau) := (\tau_2(c, \tau) - |\bar{\xi}|^2/c + c)^{1/2}$ . We denote

$$
\Box_k \psi_i = \mathscr{F}^{-1}_{\tau,\xi} \frac{\chi_{\mathbb{E}_i}(\bar{\xi},\tau)}{c^2 + P_2(|\xi|) - \tau} (\mathscr{F}_{t,x} \Box_k f)(\tau,\xi), \quad i = 1,2,3.
$$

First, we estimate  $\Box_k \psi_1$ . Set  $\tilde{\sigma} \eta_{k_1}(\xi_1) = \sum_{|l| \leq 10} \eta_{k_1+l}(\xi_1)$ . First we notice that

$$
\frac{\chi_{\mathbb{E}_{1}}(\bar{\xi}, \tau)}{c^{2} + P_{2}(|\xi|) - \tau} = \frac{\chi_{\mathbb{E}_{1}}(\bar{\xi}, \tau)}{(2\tau_{2}(c, \tau) + c)\left(\frac{|\xi|^{2}}{c} + \tau_{2}(c, \tau)\right)} + \frac{\chi_{\mathbb{E}_{1}}(\bar{\xi}, \tau)}{2a(2\tau_{2}(c, \tau) + c)}\left(\frac{1}{-\frac{\xi_{1}}{c^{1/2}} + a} + \frac{1}{\frac{\xi_{1}}{c^{1/2}} + a}\right)
$$

$$
=:\sum_{j=1}^{3} A_{j}(c, \xi, \tau).
$$

 $\hat{Z}$  Springer

According to the above decomposition, we can rewrite  $\Box_k \psi_1$  as

$$
\Box_k \psi_1
$$
\n
$$
= \mathscr{F}_{\tau,\xi}^{-1} \frac{\chi_{\mathbb{E}_1}(\bar{\xi}, \tau) \tilde{\sigma} \eta_{k_1}(ac^{1/2})}{c^2 + P_2(|\xi|) - \tau} (\mathscr{F}_{t,x} \Box_k f)(\tau, \xi)
$$
\n
$$
+ \mathscr{F}_{\tau,\xi}^{-1} \frac{\chi_{\mathbb{E}_1}(\bar{\xi}, \tau) (1 - \tilde{\sigma} \eta_{k_1}(ac^{1/2}))}{c^2 + P_2(|\xi|) - \tau} (\mathscr{F}_{t,x} \Box_k f)(\tau, \xi)
$$
\n
$$
= \sum_{j=1}^3 \mathscr{F}_{\tau,\xi}^{-1} \chi_{\mathbb{E}_1}(\bar{\xi}, \tau) A_j(\xi, \tau) \tilde{\sigma} \eta_{k_1}(ac^{1/2}) (\mathscr{F}_{t,x} \Box_k f)(\tau, \xi)
$$
\n
$$
+ \mathscr{F}_{\tau,\xi}^{-1} \frac{\chi_{\mathbb{E}_1}(\bar{\xi}, \tau) (1 - \tilde{\sigma} \eta_{k_1}(ac^{1/2}))}{c^2 + P_2(|\xi|) - \tau} (\mathscr{F}_{t,x} \Box_k f)(\tau, \xi)
$$
\n
$$
=: I + II + III + IV.
$$

*Case k*<sub>1</sub>  $\gtrsim K(c)^2$ : First, we estimate II. Let  $\tilde{\sigma} \sigma_k$  be as in [\(125\)](#page-30-3), then

$$
II = \int_{I \times \mathbb{R}^d} \frac{e^{it\tau + i\langle \bar{x}, \bar{\xi} \rangle} \chi_{\mathbb{E}_1}(\bar{\xi}, \tau)}{2a(2\tau_2(c, \tau) + c)} \tilde{\sigma} \sigma_{\bar{k}}(\bar{\xi}) \tilde{\sigma} \eta_{k_1}(ac^{1/2}) \Box \widehat{k f(y_1, \cdot)}(\bar{\xi}, \tau) c^{1/2} e^{i(x_1 - y_1)ac^{1/2}}
$$
  
 
$$
\times sgn(x_1 - y_1) d\bar{\xi} dy_1 d\tau.
$$

By changing variable,  $\xi_1 = c^{1/2}a(c, \bar{\xi}, \tau)$ , and by setting  $\tilde{\sigma} \rho_k(\xi) = \tilde{\sigma} \sigma_{\bar{k}}(\bar{\xi}) \tilde{\sigma} \eta_{k_1}(\xi_1)$ , we obtain

$$
|II| \lesssim \left| \int dy_1 sgn(x_1 - y_1) \int e^{it(c^2 + P_2(|\xi|))} e^{i(x_1 - y_1)\xi_1 + i\langle \bar{x}, \bar{\xi} \rangle} \tilde{\sigma}_{\rho_k}(\xi) \Box_k \widehat{f(y_1, \cdot)}(c^2 + P_2(|\xi|), \tau) d\xi \right|,
$$

and by applying [\(169\)](#page-38-0) we get

$$
||H||_{L_{x_1;\bar{x},t}^{q,\infty}} \lesssim \int dy_1 \left\| \int e^{it(c^2 + P_2(\vert \xi \vert))} e^{i(x_1 - y_1)\xi_1 + i\langle \bar{x}, \bar{\xi} \rangle} \tilde{\sigma} \rho_k(\xi) \Box_k \widehat{f(y_1, \cdot)}(c^2 + P_2(\vert \xi \vert), \tau) d\xi \right\|_{L_{x_1;\bar{x},t}^{q,\infty}}
$$
  

$$
\lesssim c^{d/2} \langle k_1 \rangle^{1/q} \int \|\tilde{\sigma} \rho_k(\xi)\Box_k \widehat{f(y_1, \cdot)}(c^2 + P_2(\vert \xi \vert), \tau) \|_{L_{\xi}^2} dy_1
$$
  

$$
\lesssim c^{d/2} \langle k_1 \rangle^{1/q - 3/2} \|\Box_k f\|_{L_{x_1;\bar{x},t}^{1,2}}.
$$
 (180)

Since  $k_1 > 0$ , *III* has the same upper bound as in [\(180\)](#page-40-0). Now we estimate *IV*: First notice that

<span id="page-40-0"></span>
$$
IV = \int dy_1 \int e^{it\tau + i\langle \bar{x}, \bar{\xi} \rangle} \tilde{\sigma} \sigma_{\bar{k}}(\bar{\xi}) \Box_k \widehat{f(y_1, \cdot)}(\bar{\xi}, \tau) K(x_1 - y_1, a, \bar{\xi}) d\bar{\xi},
$$
  

$$
K(x_1, a, \bar{\xi}) = \chi_{\mathbb{E}_1}(\bar{\xi}, \tau) (1 - \tilde{\sigma} \eta_{k_1}(ac^{1/2})) \int \frac{\sum_{|l| \le 1} \eta_{k_1 + l}(\xi_1) e^{ix_1\xi_1}}{c^2 + P_2(|\xi|) - \tau} d\xi_1.
$$

By Young's inequality for convolutions, Hölder's inequality and Minkowski's inequality we have

$$
\|IV\|_{L_{x_1;\bar{x},t}^{q,\infty}} \leq \left\| \int \|\tilde{\sigma} \sigma_{\bar{k}}(\bar{\xi}) \Box_{k} \widehat{f(y_1, \cdot)}(\bar{\xi}, \tau) K(x_1 - y_1, a, \bar{\xi}) \|_{L_{\bar{\xi},\tau}^{1}} dy_1 \right\|_{L_{x_1}^q} \leq \|\Box_{k} f\|_{L_{x_1;\bar{x},t}^{1,2}} \|\tilde{\sigma} \sigma_{\bar{k}}(\bar{\xi}) K(x_1, a, \bar{\xi}) \|_{L_{x_1;\bar{\xi},\tau}^{q,2}} \lesssim \|\Box_{k} f\|_{L_{x_1;\bar{x},t}^{1,2}} |\tilde{\sigma} \sigma_{\bar{k}}(\bar{\xi}) K(x_1, a, \bar{\xi}) \|_{L_{\bar{\xi}}^{\infty} L_{\tau}^{2}} L_{x_1}^{q}.
$$

Integrating by parts it follows that

$$
\|\tilde{\sigma}\sigma_{\tilde{k}}(\xi)K(x_1, a, \xi)\|_{L_{\xi}^{\infty}L_{\tau}^{2}L_{x_1}^{q}}
$$
  
\$\lesssim \sup\_{|\xi - k|\_{\infty}\leq 3} \sum\_{j=0}^{1} \|\chi\_{\mathbb{E}\_{1}}(\bar{\xi}, \tau)(1 - \tilde{\sigma}\eta\_{k\_{1}}(ac^{1/2}))\partial\_{\xi\_{1}}^{j}(c^{2} + P\_{2}(|\xi|) - \tau)^{-1}\|\_{L\_{\tau}^{2}}.\$ (181)\$

Noticing that  $|\xi - ac^{1/2}| \ge c^{1/2} \ge 1$  in the support set of  $(1 - \tilde{\sigma} \eta_{k_1}(ac^{1/2})) \chi_{|\xi_1 - k_1| \le 3} \partial_{\xi_1}^j$  $(c^{2} + P_{2}(|\xi|) - \tau)^{-1}$  we can deduce from [\(179\)](#page-39-0) that there is no singularity if we integrate [\(181\)](#page-41-0), and this gives

<span id="page-41-1"></span><span id="page-41-0"></span>
$$
\|\tilde{\sigma}\sigma_{\bar{k}}(\bar{\xi})K(x_1, a, \bar{\xi})\|_{L_{\bar{\xi}}^{\infty}L_{\tau}^2L_{x_1}^q} \lesssim c^{1/2}|k_1|^{-3/2}.
$$

Now we estimate *I*: We begin by setting

$$
J(x_1, a, \bar{\xi}) = \chi_{\mathbb{E}_1}(\bar{\xi}, \tau) \tilde{\sigma} \eta_{k_1}(ac^{1/2}) \int \frac{\sum_{|l| \le 1} \eta_{k+l}(\xi_1) e^{i x_1 \xi_1}}{(2\tau_2(c, \tau) + c) \left(\frac{|x_i|^2}{c} + \tau_2(c, \tau)\right)} d\xi_1.
$$
 (182)

One can check that

$$
I = \int dy_1 \int e^{it\tau + i\langle \bar{x}, \bar{\xi} \rangle} \tilde{\sigma} \sigma_{\bar{k}}(\bar{\xi}) \widehat{\Box_k f(y_1, \cdot)}(\bar{\xi}, \tau) J(x_1 - y_1, a, \bar{\xi}) d\bar{\xi} d\tau.
$$

Similar to the estimate of *I V*, by Young's, Hölder's and Minkowski's inequalities we obtain

$$
||I||_{L_{x_1;\bar{x},t}^{q,\infty}} \lesssim c^{1/2} ||\Box_k f||_{L_{x_1;\bar{x},t}^{1,2}} ||\tilde{\sigma}\sigma_k(\bar{\xi})J(x_1,a,\bar{\xi})||_{L_{\bar{\xi}}^{\infty}L_{\tau}^2L_{x_1}^q}.
$$

By integration by parts we get

$$
|J(x_1, a, \xi)| \lesssim \frac{\chi_{\mathbb{E}_1}(\bar{\xi}, \tau) \tilde{\sigma} \eta_{k_1}(ac^{1/2})}{(2\tau_2(c, \tau) + c)(1 + |x_1|)} \sum_{j=0}^1 \int_{|\xi_1 - k_1| \leq 3} \left| \partial_{\xi_1}^j \left( \frac{|xi|^2}{c} + \tau_2(c, \tau) \right)^{-1} \right| d\xi_1.
$$

Therefore,

$$
\|\tilde{\sigma}\sigma_{k}(\bar{\xi})J(x_{1}, a, \bar{\xi})\|_{L_{\bar{\xi}}^{\infty}L_{\tau}^{2}L_{x_{1}}^{q}}\n\lesssim \sup_{|\xi-k|\infty\leq 3}\sum_{j=0}^{1}\left\|\frac{\chi_{\mathbb{E}_{1}}(\bar{\xi}, \tau)\tilde{\sigma}\eta_{k_{1}}(ac^{1/2})}{(2\tau_{2}(c, \tau)+c)(1+|x_{1}|)}\sum_{j=0}^{1}\left|\partial_{\xi_{1}}^{j}\left(\frac{|xi|^{2}}{c}+\tau_{2}(c, \tau)\right)^{-1}\right|\right\|_{L_{\tau}^{2}}, \quad (183)
$$

and noticing that  $|ac^{1/2} - k_1| \le 20$  in the support set of  $\tilde{\sigma} \eta_{k_1} (ac^{1/2})$ , we can deduce that  $2\tau_2(c, \tau) + c \gtrsim k_1^2$ , and finally we obtain

<span id="page-41-2"></span>
$$
\|\tilde{\sigma}\sigma_{k}(\bar{\xi})J(x_{1}, a, \bar{\xi})\|_{L_{\bar{\xi}}^{\infty} L_{\tau}^{2} L_{x_{1}}^{q}} \lesssim |k_{1}|^{-2}.
$$
 (184)

The proof for the case  $k \lesssim -K(c)^2$  is similar. Furthermore, in the estimate of  $\Box_k \psi_2$  and  $\Box_k \psi_3$  we can check that there is no singularity in  $(c^2 + P_2(|\xi|) - \tau)^{-1}$  for  $|\xi_1| \ge c^{1/2}$  and  $(\bar{\xi}, \tau) \in \mathbb{E}_2 \cup \mathbb{E}_3$ . Hence one can argue as in (182)–(184) and conclude.  $(\bar{\xi}, \tau) \in \mathbb{E}_2 \cup \mathbb{E}_3$ . Hence one can argue as in [\(182\)](#page-41-1)–[\(184\)](#page-41-2) and conclude.

In the last lemma we proved that  $\Box_k \mathcal{A}_2 : L^{1,2}_{x_1,(x_j)_{j\neq 2},t} \to L^{2,\infty}_{x_1,(x_j)_{j\neq 2},t}$ . In the next lemma we show that  $\Box_k \mathscr{A}_2 : L^{1,2}_{x_2,(x_j)_{j\neq 1},t} \to L^{2,\infty}_{x_1,(x_j)_{j\neq 2},t}$ .

**Lemma 9** *Let*  $q \ge 2$ ,  $\frac{8}{d} < q \le +\infty$ ,  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^d$  *with*  $|k_i| \gtrsim c$  *and*  $h, i \in \{1, \ldots, d\}$  *with*  $h \ne i$ , *then*

$$
\|\Box_k \mathscr{A}_2 f\|_{L^{q,\infty}_{x_h; (x_j)_{j\neq h}, t}} \lesssim c^{1+d/2} \left\langle k_i \right\rangle^{-3/2+1/q} \|\Box_k f\|_{L^{1,2}_{x_i; (x_j)_{j\neq i}, t}}, \quad 0 < |t| \lesssim c^2. \tag{185}
$$

*Proof* It clearly suffices to consider the case  $h = 1$ ,  $i = 2$  and  $k_2 \ge c$ . The proof goes along the same line of that of [\(178\)](#page-39-1), and we will only prove in detail the parts that are different. For convenience, we denote  $\tilde{\sigma} \xi = (\xi_1, \xi_3, \dots, \xi_d)$ . We introduce the following regions

<span id="page-42-0"></span>
$$
\mathbb{F}_1 = \left\{ \tau - c^2 \le -c^2/4 \right\},\
$$
  
\n
$$
\mathbb{F}_2 = \left\{ -c^2/4 \le \tau - c^2 \le |\tilde{\sigma}\xi|^2 \left( -\frac{|\tilde{\sigma}\xi|^2}{c^2} + 1 \right) \right\},\
$$
  
\n
$$
\mathbb{F}_3 = \left\{ \tau - c^2 \ge |\tilde{\sigma}\xi|^2 \left( -\frac{|\tilde{\sigma}\xi|^2}{c^2} + 1 \right) \right\},\
$$

and we make the following decomposition

$$
c^{2} + P_{2}(|\xi|) - \tau = \begin{cases} \left(\frac{|\xi|^{2}}{c} + \tau_{2}(c, \tau)\right) \left(-\frac{\xi_{2}}{c^{1/2}} + a\right) \left(\frac{\xi_{2}}{c^{1/2}} + a\right) & (\tilde{\sigma}\xi, \tau) \in \mathbb{F}_{1},\\ \left(\frac{|\xi|^{2}}{c} + \tau_{2}(c, \tau)\right) \left(-\frac{|\xi|^{2}}{c} + \tau_{2}(c, \tau) + c\right), & (\tilde{\sigma}\xi, \tau) \in \mathbb{F}_{2},\\ -\left(\frac{|\xi|^{2}}{c} - \frac{c}{2}\right)^{2} + \left(\frac{5}{4}c^{2} - \tau\right), & (\tilde{\sigma}\xi, \tau) \in \mathbb{F}_{3}, \end{cases}
$$
(186)

where  $b = b(c, \tilde{\sigma}\xi, \tau) := (\tau_2(c, \tau) - |\tilde{\sigma}\xi|^2/c + c)^{1/2}, \tau_2(c, \tau) = c\left(\sqrt{\frac{5}{4} - \frac{\tau}{c^2} - \frac{1}{2}}\right)$ . We denote

$$
\Box_k \tilde{\sigma} \psi_i = \mathscr{F}_{\tau,\xi}^{-1} \frac{\chi_{\mathbb{F}_i}(\tilde{\sigma} \xi, \tau)}{c^2 + P_2(|\xi|) - \tau} (\mathscr{F}_{t,x} \Box_k f)(\tau, \xi), \quad i = 1, 2, 3.
$$

We estimate  $\Box_k \tilde{\sigma} \psi_1$ , since by definition of the regions  $\mathbb{F}_i$  the estimate of the other terms follow more easily, like in the last Lemma.

Set  $\tilde{\sigma} \eta_{k_2}(\xi_2) = \sum_{|l| \le 10} \eta_{k_2+l}(\xi_2)$ . First we notice that

$$
\frac{\chi_{\mathbb{F}_1}(\tilde{\sigma}\xi,\tau)}{c^2 + P_2(|\xi|) - \tau} = \frac{\chi_{\mathbb{F}_1}(\tilde{\sigma}\xi,\tau)}{(2\tau_2(c,\tau) + c)\left(\frac{|\xi|^2}{c} + \tau_2(c,\tau)\right)} + \frac{\chi_{\mathbb{F}_1}(\tilde{\sigma}\xi,\tau)}{2b(2\tau_2(c,\tau) + c)}\left(\frac{1}{-\frac{\xi_1}{c^{1/2}} + b} + \frac{1}{\frac{\xi_1}{c^{1/2}} + b}\right) =: \sum_{j=1}^3 B_j(c,\xi,\tau).
$$

According to the above decomposition, we can rewrite  $\Box_k \psi_1$  as

$$
\Box_k \tilde{\sigma} \psi_1
$$
\n
$$
= \sum_{j=1}^3 \mathscr{F}_{\tau,\xi}^{-1} \chi_{\mathbb{F}_1}(\tilde{\sigma}\xi,\tau) B_j(\xi,\tau) \tilde{\sigma} \eta_{k_2} (bc^{1/2}) (\mathscr{F}_{t,x} \Box_k f)(\tau,\xi)
$$
\n
$$
+ \mathscr{F}_{\tau,\xi}^{-1} \frac{\chi_{\mathbb{F}_1}(\tilde{\sigma}\xi,\tau) (1 - \tilde{\sigma} \eta_{k_2} (bc^{1/2}))}{c^2 + P_2(|\xi|) - \tau} (\mathscr{F}_{t,x} \Box_k f)(\tau,\xi)
$$
\n
$$
=: I + II + III + IV.
$$

 $\hat{\mathfrak{D}}$  Springer

The estimates of *II* and *III* follow in the same way as for [\(178\)](#page-39-1) by exchanging the roles of ξ<sup>1</sup> and ξ2. Now we estimate *I*: Set

$$
m(\xi,\tau) = \frac{\chi_{\mathbb{E}_1}(\tilde{\sigma}\xi,\tau)\tilde{\sigma}\sigma_{\tilde{k}}(\tilde{\sigma}\xi)\tilde{\sigma}\eta_{k_2}(bc^{1/2})}{2b(2\tau_2(c,\tau)+c)},
$$
\n(187)

and notice that  $2\tau_2(c, \tau) + c \gtrsim k_2^2$  in the support set of *m*; hence, for sufficiently large *c*, we have

$$
m(\xi,\tau)\lesssim \frac{\chi_{\mathbb{F}_1}\tilde{\sigma}\sigma_k(\xi)}{k_2^4},
$$

and therefore,

$$
|m||_{L_{\xi_2}^1 L_{\xi_3,\dots,\xi_d,\tau}^2 L_{\xi_1}^{2q/(q-2)}} \lesssim |k_2|^{-2}.
$$
 (188)

Now, since by Young's, Hölder's and Minkowski's inequalities we have

 $\overline{\phantom{a}}$ 

$$
\|\mathscr{F}_{\xi,\tau}^{-1}m(\xi,\tau)(\mathscr{F}_{t,x}\Box_k f)\|_{L_{x_1;\bar{x},t}^{q,\infty}} \lesssim \|\mathscr{F}_{\xi,\tau}^{-1}m(\xi,\tau)(\mathscr{F}_{t,x}\Box_k f)\|_{L_{x_1}^q L_{\bar{\sigma}\xi,\tau}^1} \leq \|m(\xi,\tau)(\mathscr{F}_{t,x}\Box_k f)\|_{L_{\bar{\sigma}\xi,\tau}^1 L_{\xi_1}^{q'}} \leq \|m\|_{L_{\xi_2}^1 L_{\xi_3,\dots,\xi_d,\tau}^2 L_{\xi_1}^{2q/(q-2)}} \|\mathscr{F}_{t,x}\Box_k f\|_{L_{\xi_2}^{\infty} L_{\xi_3}^2)_{j\neq 2,\tau} \leq \|m\|_{L_{\xi_2}^1 L_{\xi_3,\dots,\xi_d,\tau}^2 L_{\xi_1}^{2q/(q-2)}} \|\Box_k f\|_{L_{x_2}^1 L_{(x_j)}^2}.
$$
\n(189)

we can deduce that

<span id="page-43-2"></span><span id="page-43-0"></span>
$$
||I||_{L_{x_1;\bar{x},t}^{q,\infty}} \lesssim |k_2|^{-2} ||\Box_k f||_{L_{x_1}^1 L_{(x_j)_{j\neq 2},t}^2}.
$$
\n(190)

Now we estimate *IV*: Set

$$
m_k(\xi,\tau) := \frac{\chi_{\mathbb{F}_3}(\tilde{\sigma}\xi,\tau)\tilde{\sigma}\sigma_k(\xi)(1-\tilde{\sigma}\eta_{k_2}(b))}{c^2 + P_2(|\xi|) - \tau}, \quad \mathcal{M}_k(f) := \mathcal{F}_{\tau,\xi}^{-1}m_k(\xi,\tau)(\mathcal{F}_{t,x}f), \quad (191)
$$

and notice that  $\mathcal{M}_k(f)$  is the solution of the inhomogeneous equation

$$
-i\psi_t = A_{c,2}\psi - \mathscr{F}_{\tau,\xi}^{-1}m_k(\xi,\tau)(c^2 + P_2(|\xi|) - \tau)(\mathscr{F}_{t,x}f).
$$

Applying [\(159\)](#page-37-2) (recall that  $k_2 \gtrsim c$ ), we have

$$
\|\mathcal{M}_{k}(f)\|_{L_{x,t}^{\infty}} \lesssim c^{3/2} \|\mathcal{M}_{k}(f)\|_{L_{t}^{\infty}L_{x}^{2}} \leq c^{d/2} c|k_{2}|^{-3/2} \|f\|_{L_{x_{2}}^{1}L_{(x_{j})_{j\neq2},t}^{2}} = c^{\frac{d}{2}+1}|k_{2}|^{-3/2} \|f\|_{L_{x_{2}}^{1}L_{(x_{j})_{j\neq2},t}^{2}}.
$$
\n(192)

Next, for  $(\xi, \tau) \in \text{supp}(m_k)$ ,

<span id="page-43-3"></span><span id="page-43-1"></span>
$$
|c^2 + P_2(|\xi|) - \tau| \stackrel{(\tilde{\sigma}\xi, \tau) \in \mathbb{F}_3}{\sim} c^{-1} \langle k \rangle^2 |k_2|.
$$
 (193)

By the definition of *b* we have that for  $\frac{|\tilde{\sigma}\xi|}{c} \lesssim \frac{1}{2}(c + \tau_2(c, \tau))$ 

$$
|c^2 + P_2(|\xi|) - \tau| \gtrsim (c + \tau_2(c, \tau))^{3/2}, \ (\xi, \tau) \in \text{supp}(m_k), \tag{194}
$$

 $\bigcirc$  Springer

while for  $\frac{|\delta \xi|}{c} \gtrsim \frac{1}{2}(c + \tau_2(c, \tau))$  we can exploit the fact that  $|k|_{\infty} = |k_2| \gtrsim c$  to obtain again that

$$
|c^2 + P_2(|\xi|) - \tau| \gtrsim (c + \tau_2(c, \tau))^{3/2}, \ (\xi, \tau) \in \text{supp}(m_k), \tag{195}
$$

and by combining  $(191)$  with  $(194)$ – $(195)$  we obtain

$$
m_k(\xi, \tau) \lesssim c \frac{\chi_{\tau \geq \frac{3}{4}c^2} \tilde{\sigma} \sigma_k(\xi)}{(|k_2|^2 + c + \tau_2(c, \tau))^{3/2}},
$$
\n(196)

which gives

<span id="page-44-2"></span><span id="page-44-1"></span><span id="page-44-0"></span>
$$
||m_k||_{L_{\xi_2}^1 L_{\xi_3,\dots,\xi_d,\tau}^2 L_{\xi_1}^\infty} \lesssim c|k_2|^{-1}.
$$
 (197)

Therefore, from  $(191)$  and  $(189)$  we can deduce

$$
\|\mathscr{M}_k(f)\|_{L^{2,\infty}_{x_1;\tilde{x},t}} \lesssim c|k_2|^{-1} \|f\|_{L^1_{x_2} L^2_{(x_j)_{j\neq 2},t}}.
$$
\n(198)

For any  $q \ge 2$  we obtain by interpolation between [\(192\)](#page-43-3) and [\(198\)](#page-44-1)

$$
\|\mathscr{M}_k(f)\|_{L^{q,\infty}_{x_1;\tilde{x},l}} \lesssim c^{1+d\left(\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{q}\right)}|k_2|^{-3/2+1/q} \|f\|_{L^1_{x_2} L^2_{(x_j)_{j\neq 2},l}},\tag{199}
$$

and replacing *f* by  $\Box_k f$  in [\(199\)](#page-44-2), we finally obtain

$$
||IV||_{L_{x_1;\bar{x},t}^{q,\infty}} \lesssim c^{1+d\left(\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{q}\right)} |k_2|^{-3/2+1/q} ||f||_{L_{x_2}^1 L_{(x_j)_{j\neq 2}^1}^2.
$$

If we collect  $(178)$  and  $(185)$ , we can deduce

**Lemma 10** Let 
$$
q \ge 2
$$
,  $\frac{8}{d} < q \le +\infty$ ,  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^d$  with  $|k_i| \gtrsim c$  and  $h, i \in \{1, ..., d\}$ , then  
\n
$$
\|\Box_k \partial_{x_i}^2 \mathscr{A}_2 f\|_{L_{x_h, (x_j)_j \ne h, t}} \lesssim c^{1+d/2} \langle k_i \rangle^{1/2+1/q} \|\Box_k f\|_{L_{x_i, (x_j)_j \ne t}^{1, 2}}, \quad 0 < |t| \lesssim c^2.
$$
 (200)

*Remark 21* In the general case  $r > 2$  we have

1. Let  $q \ge 2$ ,  $\frac{4r}{d} < q \le +\infty$  and  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^d$  with  $|k| \gtrsim K(c)$ , then

$$
\|\Box_k \mathscr{U}_r(t)\psi_0\|_{L^{q,\infty}_{x_i:(x_j)_{j\neq i},t}} \lesssim c^{d\left(1-\frac{1}{r}\right)} \langle k \rangle^{1/q} \|\Box_k \psi_0\|_{L^2},
$$
  
0 < |t| \lesssim c^{2(r-1)}, \forall i = 1, ..., d. (201)

2. Let  $q \ge 2$ ,  $\frac{4}{d} < q \le +\infty$  and  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^d$  with  $|k| \lesssim K(c)$ , then

$$
\|\Box_k \mathscr{U}_r(t)\psi_0\|_{L^{q,\infty}_{x_i;(x_j)_{j\neq i},t}} \lesssim c \langle k \rangle^{1/q} \|\Box_k \psi_0\|_{L^2}, \quad \forall i=1,\ldots,d. \tag{202}
$$

3. Let  $q \ge 2$ ,  $\frac{4r}{d} < q \le +\infty$  and  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^d$  with  $|k_i| \gtrsim K(c)^2$  and  $i \in \{1, \ldots, d\}$ , then

$$
\|\Box_k \mathscr{A}_r f\|_{L^{q,\infty}_{x_i;(x_j)_{j\neq i},t}} \lesssim c^{r-1+d\left(1-\frac{1}{r}\right)} \langle k_i \rangle^{-r+1/2+1/q} \|\Box_k f\|_{L^{1,2}_{x_i;(x_j)_{j\neq i},t}}, \quad 0 < |t| \lesssim c^{2(r-1)}.
$$
\n(203)

 $\hat{\mathfrak{D}}$  Springer

4. Let  $q \ge 2$ ,  $\frac{4r}{d} < q \le +\infty$ ,  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^d$  with  $|k_i| \ge c$  and  $h, i \in \{1, ..., d\}$  with  $h \ne i$ , then

$$
\|\Box_k \mathscr{A}_r f\|_{L^{q,\infty}_{x_h; (\alpha_j)_{j\neq h}, t}} \leq c^{r-1+d\left(1-\frac{1}{r}\right)} \langle k_i \rangle^{-r+1/2+1/q} \|\Box_k f\|_{L^{1,2}_{x_i; (\alpha_j)_{j\neq i}, t}}, \quad 0 < |t| \lesssim c^{2(r-1)}. \tag{204}
$$

5. Let  $q \ge 2$ ,  $\frac{4r}{d} < q \le +\infty$ ,  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^d$  with  $|k_i| \gtrsim c$  and  $h, i \in \{1, ..., d\}$ , then

$$
\|\Box_k \partial_{x_i}^{2(r-1)} \mathcal{A}_r f\|_{L_{x_h;(\mathbf{x}_j)_{j\neq h}, t}^{q, \infty}}\n\lesssim c^{r-1+d\left(1-\frac{1}{r}\right)} \langle k_i \rangle^{r-3/2+1/q} \|\Box_k f\|_{L_{x_i;(\mathbf{x}_j)_{j\neq i}, t}^{1, 2}}, \quad 0 < |t| \lesssim c^{2(r-1)}.
$$
\n(205)

# **8.2.5 Proof of the local well-posedness**

In this subsection we use smoothing estimates, Strichartz estimates and maximal function estimates in order to prove Proposition [7.](#page-29-1) In order to do so, it seems necessary to estimate norms in which partial derivatives and anisotropic Lebesgue spaces have different directions, for example  $\|\partial_{x_1}^2 \Box_k \mathscr{A} f\|_{L^{2,\infty}_{x_2;0}}$  $\chi_{2,\infty}$  with  $|k|_{\infty} = |k_3|$ . As usual, we show results for the case  $r = 2$ , and then we point out the modifications for the case  $r > 2$ .

**Lemma 11** *Let i*, *l*, *m* ∈ {1, ..., *d*}, 1 ≤ *p*, *q*, ≤ +∞*. Assume that*  $k = (k_1, ..., k_d)$  *with*  $|k|_{∞} = |k_m| ≥ c$ , then

$$
\|\Box_k \partial_{x_i}^2 f\|_{L^{p,q}_{x_i;(x_j)_{j\neq i},t}} \lesssim \|\Box_k \partial_{x_m}^2 f\|_{L^{p,q}_{x_i;(x_j)_{j\neq i},t}}.
$$
\n(206)

*Proof*

$$
\|\Box_k \partial_{x_l}^2 f\|_{L^{p,q}_{x_i:(x_j)_{j\neq i},l}} \lesssim \sum_{\substack{|h_l|_{\infty},|h_m|_{\infty}\leq 1\\|\Upsilon|_k}} \left\| \mathcal{F}^{-1}_{\xi_l,\xi_m} \left( \left( \frac{\xi_l}{\xi_m} \right)^2 \eta_{k_l+h_l}(\xi_l) \eta_{k_m+l_m}(\xi_m) \right) \right\|_{L^1(\mathbb{R}^2)} \times \|\Box_k \partial_{x_m}^2 f\|_{L^{p,q}_{x_i:(x_j)_{j\neq i},l}}.
$$

<span id="page-45-3"></span><span id="page-45-2"></span><span id="page-45-1"></span><span id="page-45-0"></span> $\Box$ 

**Lemma 12** 1. *Let*  $(a, b)$  *be order-2 admissible, i*  $\in \{1, ..., d\}$ *,*  $q \ge 2$ ,  $\frac{8}{d} < q < +\infty$  and  $k ∈ \mathbb{Z}^d$  *with*  $|k|_{∞} ≥ K(c)$ *, then* 

$$
\|\Box_k \partial_{x_i}^{\alpha} \mathscr{A}_2 f\|_{L^{q,\infty}_{x_i;(x_j)_{j\neq i},t}} \lesssim c^{\frac{d}{2} + \frac{2}{a}} \langle |k|_{\infty} \rangle^{\alpha+1/q} \|\Box_k f\|_{L^{q'}_t L^{b'}_x}, \quad 0 < |t| \lesssim c^2. \tag{207}
$$

2. Let  $(a, b)$  be Schrödinger-admissible,  $i \in \{1, \ldots, d\}$ , then

$$
\|\Box_k \partial_{x_i}^2 \mathcal{A}_2 f\|_{L_t^a L_x^b} \lesssim c^{1+4/p} \left( |k|_{\infty} \right)^{1/2} \|\Box_k f\|_{L_{x_i;(x_j)_{j\neq i}}^{1,2}}, \quad 0 < |t| \lesssim c^2 \tag{208}
$$

$$
|\Box_k \partial_{x_i}^2 \mathscr{A}_2 f||_{L^{\infty,2}_{x_i;(x_j)_{j\neq i},t}} \lesssim c^{1+4/p} \left\langle |k|_{\infty} \right\rangle^{1/2} \|\Box_k f\|_{L_t^{a'} L_x^{b'}}, \quad 0 < |t| \lesssim c^2. \tag{209}
$$

 $\circledcirc$  Springer

 $\overline{\phantom{a}}$ 

# *Proof* Denote

$$
\mathscr{L}_k(f,\psi)=\int\left(\Box_k\int\mathscr{U}_2(t-\tau)f(\tau)\mathrm{d}\tau,\psi(t)\right)\mathrm{d}t.
$$

By duality and the maximal function estimate [\(169\)](#page-38-0)

$$
|\mathcal{L}_k(f, \psi)| \leq ||\Box_k f||_{L_{x_1}^{q'} L_{\bar{x},t}^1} \sum_{|l|_{\infty} \leq 1} \left||\Box_{k+l} \int \mathcal{U}_2(t-\tau) \psi(t) dt \right||_{L_{x_1}^q L_{\bar{x},t}^{\infty}}
$$
  
\n
$$
\leq ||\Box_k f||_{L_{x_1}^{q'} L_{\bar{x},t}^1} \sum_{|l|_{\infty} \leq 1} \int ||\Box_{k+l} \mathcal{U}_2(t-\tau) \psi(t) dt||_{L_{x_1}^q L_{\bar{x},t}^{\infty}}
$$
  
\n
$$
\stackrel{(169)}{\leq} c^{d/2} \langle k \rangle^{1/q} ||\Box_k f||_{L_{x_1}^{q'} L_{\bar{x},t}^1} ||\psi||_{L_{t}^1 L_{x}^2},
$$

so by duality we obtain

$$
\left\| \Box_k \int \mathcal{U}_2(t-\tau) f(\tau) d\tau \right\|_{L_t^{\infty} L_x^2} \lesssim c^{d/2} \langle k \rangle^{1/q} \|\Box_k f\|_{L_{x_1}^{q'} L_{x,t}^1}.
$$
 (210)

Therefore, by duality, Strichartz estimates [\(166\)](#page-37-3) and [\(210\)](#page-46-0)

$$
|\mathcal{L}_k(f, \psi)| \leq \left\| \Box_k \int \mathcal{U}_2(-\tau) f(\tau) d\tau \right\|_{L_x^2} \left\| \Box_k \int \mathcal{U}_2(-t) \psi(t) dt \right\|_{L_x^2}
$$
  
 
$$
\lesssim c^{d/2} \langle k \rangle^{1/q} \|f\|_{L_{x_1}^{q'} L_{x,t}^{\perp}} c^{(1-1/r)2r/a} \| \Box_k \psi \|_{L_t^{q'} L_x^{p'}}, \tag{211}
$$

which implies [\(207\)](#page-45-0) for  $q > 2$  or  $a > 2$ . In the case  $a = q = 2$ , (207) can be directly deduced from  $(169)$ . Furthermore, by  $(168)$ ,  $(157)$  and  $(159)$  we get

$$
\mathscr{L}_k(\partial_{x_i}^2 f, \psi) \lesssim c^{1+4/p} \left( |k|_{\infty} \right)^{1/2} \|\Box_k f\|_{L^{1,2}_{x_i;(x_j)_{j \neq i},t}} c^{4/p} \|\psi\|_{L^{a'}_t L^{b'}_x},\tag{212}
$$

and we can deduce [\(208\)](#page-45-1); by exchanging  $f$  and  $\psi$ , we get [\(209\)](#page-45-2).

We now summarize the results we will use in order to prove the local well-posedness of [\(112\)](#page-27-1): We omit the proof, it follows from the results of the previous subsections, together with [\(206\)](#page-45-3).

<span id="page-46-1"></span>**Proposition 14** *Let*  $d \ge 2$ *,*  $8/d \le p < +\infty$ *,*  $2 \le q < +\infty$ *,*  $q > 8/d$ *,*  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^d$  *with*  $|k|_{∞} = |k_i| ≥ c, h, i, l ∈ {1, ..., d}$ *. Then* 

$$
\left\| \Box_k D_{x_i}^{3/2} \mathscr{U}_2(t) \psi_0 \right\|_{L_{x_i; (x_j)_{j \neq i}, t}^{\infty, 2}} \lesssim c \|\Box_k \psi_0\|_{L^2},
$$
\n(213)

$$
\|\Box_k \mathscr{U}_2(t)\psi_0\|_{L^{q,\infty}_{x_i;(x_j)_{j\neq i},\ell}} \lesssim c^{d/2} \langle k \rangle^{1/q} \|\Box_k \psi_0\|_{L^2}, \quad 0 < |t| \lesssim c^2,\tag{214}
$$

$$
\|\Box_k \mathscr{U}_2(t)\phi_0\|_{L_t^\infty L_x^2 \cap L_x^{2+p}} \lesssim c^{\frac{4}{p(p+2)}} \|\Box_k \phi_0\|_{L^2}, \quad 0 < |t| \lesssim c^2 \tag{215}
$$

$$
\|\Box_k \partial_{x_l}^2 \mathscr{A}_2 f\|_{L^{\infty,2}_{x_i;(x_j)_{j\neq i},t}} \lesssim \|\Box_k f\|_{L^{1,2}_{x_i;(x_j)_{j\neq i},t}},\tag{216}
$$

$$
\|\Box_k \partial_{x_l}^2 \mathcal{A}_2 f\|_{L^{q,\infty}_{x_h:(x_j)_{j\neq h},t}} \lesssim c^{1+d/2} \langle k_i \rangle^{1/2+1/q} \|\Box_k f\|_{L^{1,2}_{x_i:(x_j)_{j\neq i},t}}, \quad 0 < |t| \lesssim c^2, \tag{217}
$$

$$
\|\Box_k \partial_{x_l}^2 \mathscr{A}_2 f\|_{L_l^{\infty} L_x^2 \cap L_{t,x}^{2+p}} \lesssim c^{1+\frac{4}{p(p+2)}} \langle k_i \rangle^{1/2} \|\Box_k f\|_{L_{x_i; (x_j)_{j\neq i}, t}}^{\, 1, 2}, \quad 0 < |t| \lesssim c^2 \qquad (218)
$$

$$
\|\Box_k \partial_{x_l}^2 \mathscr{A}_2 f\|_{L^{\infty,2}_{x_i;(x_j)_{j\neq i},t}} \lesssim c^{1+\frac{4}{p(p+2)}} \langle k_i \rangle^{1/2} \|\Box_k f\|_{L^{(2+p)/(1+p)}_{t,x}}, \quad 0 < |t| \lesssim c^2, \tag{219}
$$

<span id="page-46-5"></span><span id="page-46-4"></span><span id="page-46-3"></span><span id="page-46-2"></span><span id="page-46-0"></span>
$$
\Box
$$

$$
\|\Box_k \partial_{x_l}^2 \mathscr{A}_2 f\|_{L^{q,\infty}_{x_i;(x_j)_{j\neq i},t}} \lesssim c^{\frac{d}{2} + \frac{2}{p+2} + \frac{4}{p(p+2)}} \langle k_i \rangle^{2+1/q} \|\Box_k f\|_{L^{(2+p)/(1+p)}_{t,x}}, \quad 0 < |t| \lesssim c^2,
$$
\n(220)

<span id="page-47-1"></span><span id="page-47-0"></span>
$$
\|\Box_k \mathscr{A}_2 f\|_{L_t^{\infty} L_x^2 \cap L_{t,x}^{2+p}} \lesssim c^{\frac{8}{p(p+2)}} \|\Box_k f\|_{L_{t,x}^{(2+p)/(1+p)}}. \tag{221}
$$

For the case  $r > 2$  we have the following results

*Remark 22* 1. Let  $(a, b)$  be order-*r* admissible,  $i \in \{1, ..., d\}$ ,  $q \ge 2$ ,  $\frac{4r}{d} < q < +\infty$  and *k* ∈  $\mathbb{Z}^d$  with  $|k|_{\infty} \gtrsim K(c)$ , then

$$
\|\Box_k \partial_{x_i}^{\alpha} \mathscr{A}_r f\|_{L^{q,\infty}_{x_i;(x_j)_{j\neq i},t}} \lesssim c^{d\left(1-\frac{1}{r}\right) + \left(1-\frac{1}{r}\right)\frac{2r}{a}} \langle |k|_{\infty} \rangle^{\alpha+1/q} \|\Box_k f\|_{L^{q'}_t L^{b'}_x}, \quad 0 < |t| \lesssim c^{2(r-1)}.
$$
\n(222)

2. Let  $(a, b)$  be Schrödinger-admissible,  $i \in \{1, ..., d\}$ , then

$$
\|\Box_k \partial_{x_i}^{2(r-1)} \mathscr{A}_r f\|_{L_t^a L_x^b} \lesssim c^{r-1+2r/a} \langle |k|_{\infty} \rangle^{r-3/2} \|\Box_k f\|_{L_{x_i;(x_j)_{j\neq i},t}^{1,2}}, \quad 0 < |t| \lesssim c^{2(r-1)} \tag{223}
$$

$$
\|\Box_k \partial_{x_i}^{2(r-1)} \mathscr{A}_2 f\|_{L_{x_i; (x_j)_{j \neq i}, t}^{\infty, 2}} \lesssim c^{r-1+2r/a} \langle |k|_{\infty} \rangle^{r-3/2} \|\Box_k f\|_{L_t^{a'} L_x^{b'}}, \quad 0 < |t| \lesssim c^{2(r-1)}.
$$
\n(224)

**Proposition 15** *Let*  $d \geq 2$ *,*  $4r/d \leq p < +\infty$ *,*  $2 \leq q < +\infty$ *,*  $q > 4r/d$ *,*  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^d$  *with*  $|k|∞ = |k_i| ≥ c, h, i, l ∈ {1, ..., d}$ *. Then* 

$$
\left\| \Box_k D_{x_i}^{r-1/2} \mathcal{U}_r(t) \psi_0 \right\|_{L_{x_i; (x_j)_j \neq i, t}} \lesssim c^{r-1} \|\Box_k \psi_0\|_{L^2},\tag{225}
$$

$$
\|\Box_k \mathscr{U}_r(t)\psi_0\|_{L^{q,\infty}_{x_i;(x_j)_{j\neq i},t}} \lesssim c^{d\left(1-\frac{1}{r}\right)} \langle k \rangle^{1/q} \|\Box_k \psi_0\|_{L^2}, \ 0 < |t| \lesssim c^{2(r-1)}, \quad (226)
$$

$$
\|\Box_k \mathscr{U}_r(t)\phi_0\|_{L_t^\infty L_x^2 \cap L_x^{2(r-1)+p}} \lesssim c^{\frac{4(r-1)^2}{p(p+2(r-1))}} \|\Box_k \phi_0\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}, \ 0 < |t| \lesssim c^{2(r-1)} \qquad (227)
$$

$$
\|\Box_k \partial_{x_l}^{2(r-1)} \mathscr{A}_r f\|_{L^{\infty,2}_{x_i;(x_j)_{j\neq i},r}} \lesssim \|\Box_k f\|_{L^{1,2}_{x_i;(x_j)_{j\neq i},r}},\tag{228}
$$

$$
\|\Box_k \partial_{x_l}^{2(r-1)} \mathcal{A}_r f\|_{L^{q,\infty}_{x_h:(x_j)_{j\neq h},l}} \lesssim c^{r-1+d\left(1-\frac{1}{r}\right)} \langle k_i \rangle^{r-3/2+1/q} \|\Box_k f\|_{L^{1,2}_{x_i:(x_j)_{j\neq i},l}},
$$
\n
$$
0 < |t| \lesssim c^{2(r-1)},
$$
\n
$$
(229)
$$

$$
\|\Box_k \partial_{x_l}^{2(r-1)} \mathcal{A}_r f\|_{L_t^{\infty} L_x^2 \cap L_{t,x}^{2(r-1)+p}} \lesssim c^{r-1+\frac{4(r-1)^2}{p(p+2(r-1))}} \langle k_i \rangle^{r-3/2} \|\Box_k f\|_{L_{x_i;(x_j)_{j\neq i},l}^{1,2}},
$$
  
0 < |t| \lesssim c^{2(r-1)} (230)

$$
\|\Box_k \partial_{x_l}^{2(r-1)} \mathcal{A}_r f\|_{L_{x_i:(x_j)_j\neq i, t}^{\infty, 2}} \lesssim c^{r-1 + \frac{4(r-1)^2}{p(p+2(r-1))}} \langle k_i \rangle^{r-3/2} \|\Box_k f\|_{L_{t,x}^{\frac{2(r-1)+p}{2r-1+p}}},
$$
\n
$$
0 < |t| \lesssim c^{2(r-1)},
$$
\n
$$
(231)
$$

$$
\|\Box_k \partial_{x_l}^{2(r-1)} \mathcal{A}_r f\|_{L^{q,\infty}_{x_i;(x_j)_{j\neq i},l}} \lesssim c^{\frac{d}{2}+\frac{2r}{p+2(r-1)}+\frac{4(r-1)^2}{p(p+2(r-1))}} \langle k_i \rangle^{2(r-1)+1/q} \|\Box_k f\|_{L^{\frac{2(r-1)+p}{2r-1+p}}_{t,x}},
$$

$$
0 < |t| \lesssim c^{2(r-1)},\tag{232}
$$

$$
\|\Box_k \mathscr{A}_r f\|_{L_t^\infty L_x^2 \cap L_{t,x}^{2(r-1)+p}} \lesssim c^{\frac{8(r-1)^2}{p(p+2(r-1))}} \|\Box_k f\|_{L_{t,x}^{\frac{2(r-1)+p}{2r-1+p}}}.
$$
\n(233)

 $\hat{Z}$  Springer

For convenience, we state some technical results related to nonlinear mapping estimates. For  $i = 1, \ldots, d$  and  $N \in \mathbb{N}$  we set

$$
\mathbb{B}_{i,1}^{(N)} := \left\{ \left( k^{(1)}, \ldots, k^{(N)} \right) \in (\mathbb{Z}^d)^N : \max \left( |k_i^{(1)}|, \ldots, |k_i^{(N)}| \right) \gtrsim c \right\},\newline\n\mathbb{B}_{i,2}^{(N)} := \left\{ \left( k^{(1)}, \ldots, k^{(N)} \right) \in (\mathbb{Z}^d)^N : \max \left( |k_i^{(1)}|, \ldots, |k_i^{(N)}| \right) \lesssim c \right\}.
$$

**Lemma 13** *Let s* ≥ 0*, N* ≥ 3*, i* ∈ {1*,...,d*}*, then* 

$$
\left\| \sum_{\mathbb{B}_{i,1}^{(N)}} \Box_{k^{(1)}} \psi_1 \cdots \Box_{k^{(N)}} \psi_N \right\|_{l_{\Box,i,c}^{1,s}(L_{x_1,(x_j)_j \neq 2}^{1,2},l)}} \leq \sum_{\alpha=1}^N \|\psi_\alpha\|_{\cap_{h=1}^d l_{\Box,h,c}^{1,s}(L_{x_h,(x_j)_j \neq h}^{{\infty,2}},l)} \prod_{\substack{\beta=1,\dots,d\\ \beta \neq \alpha}} \|\psi_\beta\|_{\cap_{h=1}^d l_{\Box}^{1}(L_{x_h,(x_j)_j \neq h}^{N-1,\infty},l)}} \tag{234}
$$

**Proof** See proof of Lemma 3.1 in [\[50](#page-69-6)].

**Lemma 14** *Let*  $N \geq 1$  *and*  $i \in \{1, ..., d\}$ *, and assume that*  $1 \leq p, q, p_1, q_1, ..., p_N, q_N \leq$ +∞ *satisfy*

$$
\frac{1}{p} = \frac{1}{p_1} + \dots + \frac{1}{p_N}, \quad \frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{q_1} + \dots + \frac{1}{q_N},
$$

*then*

$$
\left\| \sum_{\mathbb{B}_{i,2}^{(N)}} \Box_{k^{(1)}} \psi_1 \cdots \Box_{k^{(N)}} \psi_N \right\|_{l^1_{\Box, i,c}(L_i^q L_x^p)} \lesssim c^d N^d \sum_{\mathbb{B}_{i,2}^{(N)}} \prod_{i=1}^N \|\Box_{k^{(i)}} \psi_i\|_{L_i^{q_i} L_x^{p_i}}.
$$
 (235)

*Proof* See proof of Lemma 3.3 in [\[50](#page-69-6)]. □

**Lemma 15** *Let s* ≥ 0*, N* ≥ 1 *and i* ∈ {1, ..., *d*}*, and assume that*  $1 ≤ p, q, p_1, q_1, ..., p_N$ *,*  $q_N \leq +\infty$  *satisfy* 

$$
\frac{1}{p} = \frac{1}{p_1} + \dots + \frac{1}{p_N}, \quad \frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{q_1} + \dots + \frac{1}{q_N},
$$

*then*

 $\|\psi_1 \cdots \psi_N\|_{l^{\frac{1}{\lvert \sigma \rvert}}_{\square}(L^p_t L^q_x)} \lesssim N^d \prod_{i=1}$ *N i*=1  $\|\psi_i\|_{l_{\Box}^{1,s}(L_t^{p_i}L_x^{q_i})}$ . (236)

**Proof** See proof of Lemma 8.2 in [\[59](#page-69-13)].

*Proof* (Proposition [7,](#page-29-1) part (i), case  $r = 2$ ) Since the nonlinearity contains terms of the form  $(\partial_x^{\alpha} \psi)^{\beta}$  with  $|\alpha| \le 2$ ,  $|\beta| \ge m + 1$ , we introduce the space

$$
D := \left\{ \psi \in \mathscr{S}' : \|\psi\|_{D} := \sum_{|\alpha| \leq 2} \sum_{l=1}^{3} \sum_{i,j=1}^{d} \rho_l^{(i)}(\partial_{x_j}^{\alpha} \psi) \lesssim c^{-\delta_0} \right\},\
$$

 $\hat{\mathfrak{D}}$  Springer

<span id="page-48-2"></span><span id="page-48-0"></span>

<span id="page-48-1"></span>
$$
\overline{a}
$$

where

$$
\rho_1^{(i)}(\psi) := \|\psi\|_{l_{\square,i,c}^{1,s-r+1/2+1/m}(L_{x_i;(x_j)_{j\neq i},t}^{\infty,2})},
$$
  

$$
\rho_2^{(i)}(\psi) := \|\psi\|_{l_{\square}^{1,s}(L_{x_i;(x_j)_{j\neq i},t}^{m,\infty})},
$$
  

$$
\rho_3^{(i)}(\psi) := \|\psi\|_{l_{\square}^{1,s+1/m}(L_t^{\infty}L_x^2 \cap L_{t,x}^{2+m})}.
$$

and for some  $\delta_0 > 0$  that we will choose later.

Since  $\|\psi\|_D = \|\psi\|_D$ , without loss of generality we can assume that the nonlinearity contain only terms of the form

$$
\psi^{\beta_0}(\partial_x^{\alpha_1}\psi)^{\beta_1}(\partial_x^{\alpha_2}\psi)^{\beta_2}=: \Psi_1 \ldots \Psi_R,
$$

where  $R := |\beta| = \beta_0 + |\beta_1| + |\beta_2|, |\alpha_i| = i$  (*i* = 1, 2).

To prove the first part of Proposition [7](#page-29-1) we will show that the map

$$
\mathscr{F}: D \to D,
$$
  

$$
\psi(t) \mapsto \mathscr{U}_2(t)\psi_0 + i\mathscr{A}_2 P\left(\left(\partial_x^{\alpha}\psi\right)_{|\alpha| \le 2}, \left(\partial_x^{\alpha}\bar{\psi}\right)_{|\alpha| \le 2}\right)
$$

is a contraction mapping.

First, we have that by Proposition [14](#page-46-1)

$$
\|\mathscr{U}_2(t)\psi_0\|_D\lesssim c^{\frac{d}{2}+\frac{4}{m(m+2)}}\|\psi_0\|_{M^{s+3+1/m}_{2,1}}.
$$

Now, for the estimate of  $\rho_1^{(i)}( \mathscr{A}_2 \partial_{x_j}^{\alpha} F)$   $(i, j = 1, ..., d)$  it suffices to estimate  $\rho_1^{(1)}( \mathscr{A}_2 \partial_{x_1}^{\alpha} F)$ : Indeed, by  $(206)$ 

$$
\rho_1^{(1)}(\mathscr{A}_2 \partial_{x_2}^{\alpha} F) \lesssim \rho_1^{(1)}(\mathscr{A}_2 \partial_{x_1}^{\alpha} F).
$$

Using frequency-uniform decomposition, we write

$$
\Box_k(\Psi_1 \cdots \Psi_R) = \sum_{\mathbb{B}_{1,1}^{(R)}} \Box_k (\Box_{k^{(1)}} \Psi_1 \cdots \Box_{k^{(R)}} \Psi_R) + \sum_{\mathbb{B}_{1,2}^{(R)}} \Box_k (\Box_{k^{(1)}} \Psi_1 \cdots \Box_{k^{(R)}} \Psi_R).
$$

By exploiting [\(216\)](#page-46-2) and [\(234\)](#page-48-0) for the first sum and [\(219\)](#page-46-3) and [\(236\)](#page-48-1) for the second sum we obtain

$$
\rho_1^{(1)}(\mathscr{A}_2 \partial_{x_1}^{\alpha}(\Psi_1 \cdots \Psi_R)) \lesssim \left\| \sum_{\mathbb{B}_{1,1}^{(R)}} \Box_k(\mathbf{u}) \Psi_1 \cdots \Box_k(\mathbf{u}) \Psi_R \right\|_{l_{\Box,1,c}^{1,s-r+1/2+1/m} \left( L_{x_1,(x_j)_{j\neq 1},l}^{1,2} \right)}
$$
  
+  $c^{1+\frac{4}{R^2-1}} \left\| \sum_{\mathbb{B}_{1,1}^{(R)}} \Box_k(\mathbf{u}) \Psi_1 \cdots \Box_k(\mathbf{u}) \Psi_R \right\|_{l_{\Box,1,c}^{1,c} (L_{t,x}^{\frac{R+1}{R}})}} \right\|_{l_{\Box,1,c}^{1,c} (L_{t,x}^{\frac{R+1}{R}})}.$ 

 $\bigcirc$  Springer

Next, we estimate  $\rho_2^{(1)}(\mathscr{A}_2(\Psi_1 \cdots \Psi_R))$  and  $\rho_3^{(1)}(\mathscr{A}_2(\Psi_1 \cdots \Psi_R))$ . By [\(221\)](#page-47-0) and [\(220\)](#page-47-1) we have

$$
\sum_{j=2}^{3} \rho_j^{(1)}(\mathscr{A}_2(\Psi_1 \cdots \Psi_R)) \lesssim c^{\frac{d}{2} + \frac{2}{m+2} + \frac{8}{m(m+2)}} \|\Psi_1 \cdots \Psi_R\|_{l^{1,s+1/m}} \left( L_{l,x}^{\frac{2+m}{1+m}} \right)
$$
  

$$
\lesssim c^{\frac{d}{2} + \frac{2}{m+2} + \frac{8}{m(m+2)}} R^d \|\psi\|_D^R.
$$

Then we consider  $\rho_2^{(1)}(\mathscr{A}_2 \partial_{x_1}^2(\Psi_1 \cdots \Psi_R))$ : We have

$$
\rho_2^{(1)}(\mathscr{A}_2 \partial_{x_1}^2(\Psi_1 \cdots \Psi_R)) \lesssim \left( \sum_{\substack{k \in \mathbb{Z}^d \\ |k|_{\infty} \gtrsim c}} + \sum_{\substack{k \in \mathbb{Z}^d \\ |k|_{\infty} \leq c}} \right) \|\Box_k \mathscr{A}_2 \partial_{x_1}^2(\Psi_1 \cdots \Psi_R)\|_{L^{m,\infty}_{x_1;(x_j)_{j \neq 1},t}}
$$
  
=:  $III + IV$ .

Again by  $(220)$  and  $(236)$  we obtain

$$
IV \lesssim c^{\frac{d}{2} + \frac{2}{m+2} + \frac{4}{m(m+2)}} \|\Psi_1 \dots \Psi_R\|_{l^{1,s+1/m}} \left( L_{t,x}^{\frac{2+m}{1+m}} \right)
$$
  

$$
\lesssim c^{\frac{d}{2} + \frac{2}{m+2} + \frac{4}{m(m+2)}} R^d \|\psi\|_D^R.
$$

Furthermore, we have that

$$
III \lesssim \left(\sum_{k \in \mathbb{Z}_1^d} + \cdots + \sum_{k \in \mathbb{Z}_d^d} \right) \|\Box_k \mathcal{A}_2 \partial_{x_1}^2 (\Psi_1 \dots \Psi_R) \|_{L^{m,\infty}_{x_1;(x_j)_{j\neq 1},t}}
$$
  
=:  $G_1(\psi) + \cdots G_d(\psi)$ .

Using the frequency-uniform decomposition, [\(217\)](#page-46-4), [\(234\)](#page-48-0) and [\(235\)](#page-48-2) we have that

$$
G_i(\psi) \lesssim c^{1+3\frac{d}{2}} R^d \|\psi\|_D^R, \quad i = 1, ..., d,
$$

therefore

$$
III \lesssim c^{1+3\frac{d}{2}} R^d \|\psi\|_D^R,
$$

Finally, we estimate  $\rho_3^{(1)}(\mathscr{A}_2 \partial_{x_i}^2(\Psi_1 \dots \Psi_R))$ . It suffices to consider the case  $i = 1$ : By  $(168)$  and  $(157)$  we have

$$
\|\Box_k \mathscr{A}_2 \partial_{x_1}^2 f\|_{L_t^{\infty} L^2 \cap L_{t,x}^{2+m}} \lesssim c^{\frac{4}{m(m+2)}} \langle k_1 \rangle^2 \|\Box_k f\|_{L_{t,x}^{\frac{2+m}{1+m}}}.
$$

and by  $(218)$  and  $(207)$  we obtain

$$
\rho_3^{(1)}(\mathscr{A}_2 \, \partial_{x_i}^2 (\Psi_1 \cdots \Psi_R)) \lesssim c^{1 + \frac{8}{m(m+2)} + \frac{d}{2}} R^d \|\psi\|_D^R.
$$

Collecting all estimates, we have

$$
\|\mathcal{F}(\psi)\|_{D} \lesssim c^{\frac{d}{2} + \frac{4}{m(m+2)}} \|\psi_0\|_{M_{2,1}^{s+3+1/m}} + c^{1 + \frac{3d}{2} + \frac{2}{m+2} + \frac{8}{m(m+2)}} \sum_{m+1 \le R < M} c^{\frac{4}{R^2 - 1}} R^d \|\psi\|_{D}^R. \tag{237}
$$

<sup>2</sup> Springer

and for  $c \geq 1$  sufficiently large we can conclude by a standard contraction mapping argument (see, for example, the proof of Theorem 1.1 in  $[16]$  $[16]$ ), by choosing

$$
\delta > \delta_0(d, m, 2) := \max\left(\frac{d}{2} + \frac{4}{m(m+2)}, \frac{1}{m} + \frac{3d}{2m} + \frac{2}{m(m+2)} + \frac{8}{m^2(m+2)} + \frac{4}{m^3}\right).
$$
\n(238)

*Remark 23* By arguing in the same way for the general case  $r > 2$  we end up with the condition

$$
\delta > \delta_0(d, m, r) \tag{239}
$$
\n
$$
d = \frac{1}{2} \delta_0 \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{1}{2} \right) \left( \frac{1}{2
$$

<span id="page-51-0"></span>
$$
:= \max\left(d\left(1 - \frac{1}{r}\right) + \frac{4r}{m^2(m+2(r-1))}, \frac{r-1}{m} + \frac{3d}{2m} + \frac{2rm + 8(r-1)^2}{m^2(m+2(r-1))} + \frac{4(r-1)^2}{m^3}\right).
$$
\n(240)

*Remark 24* The quantity  $\delta_0(d, l, r)$  defined in Corollary [1](#page-29-2) is actually the right-hand side of [\(240\)](#page-51-0) with *m* replaced by  $2(l - 1)$ .

In order to prove the second part of Proposition [7](#page-29-1) we will exploit another contraction mapping argument, like in the proof of Theorem 1 in [\[28](#page-68-13)] (which in turn is based on the proof of Theorem 4.1 of [\[30\]](#page-68-23)). In the following, we denote by a  $(Q_\alpha)_{\alpha \in \mathbb{Z}^d}$  a fixed family of nonoverlapping cubes of size *R* such that  $\mathbb{R}^d = \bigcup_{\alpha} Q_{\alpha}$ .

**Lemma 16** *Let*  $d \geq 2$  *and*  $r \geq 2$ *, then the following estimates hold.* 

*–* (Local smoothing, homogeneous case)

$$
\sup_{\alpha \in \mathbb{Z}^d} \left( \int_{Q_{\alpha}} \int_{\mathbb{R}} |D_x^{r-1/2} \mathcal{U}_r(t)\psi_0(x)|^2 \mathrm{d}t \mathrm{d}x \right)^{1/2} \lesssim c^{r-1} R^{1/2} \|\psi_0\|_{L^2},\tag{241}
$$

$$
\left\|D_x^r \int_I \mathcal{U}_r(t-\tau) \psi(\tau,\cdot) d\tau\right\|_2 \lesssim c^{r-1} R^{1/2} \sum_{\alpha \in \mathbb{Z}^d} \left(\int_{Q_\alpha} \int_I |\psi(t,x)|^2 dt dx\right)^{1/2};
$$
 (242)

*–* (Local smoothing, inhomogeneous case)*the solution of the inhomogeneous Cauchy problem*

<span id="page-51-3"></span><span id="page-51-2"></span><span id="page-51-1"></span>
$$
-i\psi_t = A_{c,r}\psi + f(t,x), \quad t \in I, x \in \mathbb{R}^d,
$$

*such that*  $\psi_0 \equiv 0$  *satisfies* 

$$
\sup_{\alpha \in \mathbb{Z}^d} \|D_x^{2(r-1)}\psi\|_{L^2_x(Q_\alpha);L^2_t(I)} \lesssim c^{2(r-1)}\,RT^{1/(4d)} \sum_{\alpha \in \mathbb{Z}^d} \|f\|_{L^2_x(Q_\alpha);L^2_t(I)} \tag{243}
$$

*–* (Maximal function estimate) *For any*  $s > d + \frac{1}{2}$  *we have* 

$$
\left(\int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \sup_{|t| \lesssim c^{2(r-1)}} |\mathscr{U}_r(t)\psi_0(x)|^2 dx\right)^{1/2} \lesssim c^{d\left(1-\frac{1}{r}\right)} \|\psi_0\|_{H^s}.
$$
 (244)

*Proof (sketch)* The proof in the case  $r = 2$  can be obtained simply by rescaling Lemma 3, Lemma 4, Lemma 5 and Lemma 6 of  $[28]$  $[28]$ . The proof in the case  $r > 2$  can be obtained by considering the operator  $\mathcal{U}_r(t)$  and  $\mathcal{A}_r(t)$  instead of  $\mathcal{U}_2(t)$  and  $\mathcal{A}_2(t)$ . *Proof* (Proposition [7,](#page-29-1) part (ii), case  $r = 2$ ) We will prove the result only for  $s = s_0$ , since the general case follows from commutator estimates. For simplicity, we only deal with the case

$$
P((\partial_x^{\alpha}\psi)_{|\alpha|\leq 2}, (\partial_x^{\alpha}\bar{\psi})_{|\alpha|\leq 2}) = \partial_{x_j}^2\psi \partial_{x_k}^2\psi \partial_{x_m}^2\psi.
$$

More precisely, we fix a positive constant  $\nu < 1/3$ , and we define the space  $Z_I^{\delta}$  of all function  $\phi: I \times \mathbb{R}^d \to \mathbb{C}$  such that the following three conditions hold

$$
\|\phi\|_{L^{\infty}(I)H^{s_0}} \leq c^{-\delta},\tag{245}
$$

$$
\sum_{|\beta|=s_0+1/2} \sup_{\alpha \in \mathbb{Z}^d} \left( \int_I \int_{Q_\alpha} |\partial_x^{\beta} \phi(t,x)|^2 dx dt \right)^{1/2} \le T^{\nu},\tag{246}
$$

$$
\left(\sup_{t\in I} \sup_{x\in Q_{\alpha}} |D_x^2 \phi(t, x)|^2\right)^{1/2} \le c^{-\delta}.\tag{247}
$$

We want to show that the map

$$
\mathscr{F}: Z_I^{\delta} \to Z_I^{\delta},
$$
  
\n
$$
\psi(t) \mapsto \mathscr{U}_2(t)\psi_0 + i\mathscr{A}_2 P((\partial_x^{\alpha}\psi)_{|\alpha| \le 2}, (\partial_x^{\alpha}\bar{\psi})_{|\alpha| \le 2})
$$

is a contraction mapping.

We can observe that for any  $\beta \in \mathbb{Z}^d$  with  $|\beta| = s_0 - \frac{3}{2}$ 

$$
\partial_x^{\beta} (\partial_{x_j}^2 \psi \partial_{x_k}^2 \psi \partial_{x_m}^2 \psi) = \partial_x^{\beta} \partial_{x_j}^2 \psi \partial_{x_k}^2 \psi \partial_{x_m}^2 \psi + \partial_{x_j}^2 \psi \partial_x^{\beta} \partial_{x_k}^2 \psi \partial_{x_m}^2 \psi + \partial_{x_j}^2 \psi \partial_x^{\beta} \partial_{x_m}^2 \psi
$$

$$
+ R \left( (\partial_x^Y \psi)_{2 \le |\gamma| \le s_0 - 1/2} \right).
$$

Now, for any  $\psi \in Z_I^{\delta}$  we have

$$
\sum_{|\beta|=s_{0}+1/2} \sup_{\alpha\in\mathbb{Z}^{d}} \left( \int_{I} \int_{Q_{\alpha}} |\partial_{x}^{\beta} \psi(t,x)|^{2} dx dt \right)^{1/2} \n\lesssim \sum_{|\beta|=s_{0}+1/2} \sup_{\alpha\in\mathbb{Z}^{d}} \left( \int_{I} \int_{Q_{\alpha}} |\partial_{\alpha}^{\beta} \psi_{0}(x)|^{2} dx dt \right)^{1/2} \n+ \sum_{|\beta|=s_{0}+1/2} \sup_{\alpha\in\mathbb{Z}^{d}} \left( \int_{I} \int_{Q_{\alpha}} \left| \int_{0}^{t} \mathcal{U}_{2}(t-\tau) \partial_{x}^{\beta} (\partial_{x_{j}}^{2} \psi \partial_{x_{k}}^{2} \psi \partial_{x_{m}}^{2} \psi) d\tau \right|^{2} dx dt \right)^{1/2} \n\lesssim c T^{1/3} \|\psi_{0}\|_{H^{s_{0}}} + c^{2} T^{1/(4d)} \sum_{|\beta_{0}|=s_{0}-3/2} \sum_{j,k,m=1}^{d} \sum_{\alpha\in\mathbb{Z}^{d}} \|\partial_{x}^{\beta} \partial_{x_{j}}^{2} \psi \partial_{x_{k}}^{2} \psi \partial_{x_{m}}^{2} \psi \|_{L_{x}^{2}(Q_{\alpha};L_{t}^{2}(I))} \n+ c^{2} \int_{0}^{T} \|D_{x}^{1/2} R((\partial_{x}^{\gamma} \psi)_{2 \leq |\gamma| \leq s_{0}-1/2}) \|_{L^{2}} dt \n\lesssim c T^{1/3} \|\psi_{0}\|_{H^{s_{0}}} + c^{2} T^{1/(4d)} \n\sum_{|\beta_{0}|=s_{0}+1/2} \sup_{\alpha\in\mathbb{Z}^{d}} \left( \int_{I} \int_{Q_{\alpha}} |\partial_{x}^{\beta} \psi|^{2} dx dt \right)^{1/2} \left( \sum_{\alpha\in\mathbb{Z}^{d}} \sup_{t\in I} \sup_{x\in Q_{\alpha}} |D_{x}^{2} \psi|^{2} \right) \n+ c^{2} T \sup_{t\in I} \|\psi\|_{H^{s_{0}}}^{3} \n\lesssim c^{1-\delta} T^{1/3} + c^{2} T^{1/(4
$$

<sup>2</sup> Springer

where in the last inequality we have chosen  $\delta \gg 1$  such that

<span id="page-53-1"></span>
$$
c^{1-\delta}T^{-\nu+1/3} + c^{2(1-\delta)}T^{1/(4d)} + c^{2-3\delta}T^{1-\nu} \lesssim 1, \quad T = \mathcal{O}(c^{2(r-1)}).
$$
 (249)

Next, we have that for any  $\psi \in Z_I^{\delta}$ 

$$
\|\psi\|_{L^{\infty}(I)H^{s_{0}}} \leq \|\psi_{0}\|_{H^{s_{0}}} + \sup_{t \in I} \int_{0}^{t} \|\mathcal{U}_{2}(t-\tau)d_{x_{j}}^{2}\psi(\tau)\partial_{x_{k}}^{2}\psi(\tau)\partial_{x_{m}}^{2}\psi(\tau)\|_{L^{2}}d\tau
$$
  
+ 
$$
\sup_{t \in I} \left\|D_{x}^{3/2}\int_{0}^{t} \mathcal{U}_{2}(t-\tau)D_{x}^{s_{0}-3/2}d_{x_{j}}^{2}\psi(\tau)\partial_{x_{k}}^{2}\psi(\tau)\partial_{x_{m}}^{2}\psi(\tau)d\tau\right\|_{L^{2}}
$$
  

$$
\lesssim \|\psi_{0}\|_{H^{s_{0}}} + T \sup_{t \in I} \|\partial_{x_{j}}^{2}\psi(t)\partial_{x_{k}}^{2}\psi(t)\partial_{x_{m}}^{2}\psi(t)\|_{L^{2}}
$$
  
+ 
$$
c^{r-1} \sum_{\alpha \in \mathbb{Z}^{d}} \left( \int_{Q_{\alpha}} \int_{I} |D_{x}^{s_{0}-3/2}(\partial_{x_{j}}^{2}\psi(t)\partial_{x_{k}}^{2}\psi(t)\partial_{x_{m}}^{2}\psi(t))|^{2}dt dx \right)^{1/2}
$$
  

$$
\lesssim \|\psi_{0}\|_{H^{s_{0}}} + T \sup_{t \in I} \|\psi\|_{H^{s}_{\frac{\alpha}{2}+2}}^{3}
$$
  
+ 
$$
c \sum_{j,k,m=1}^{d} \sum_{\alpha \in \mathbb{Z}^{d}} \left( \int_{Q_{\alpha}} \int_{I} |D_{x}^{s_{0}-3/2}\partial_{x_{j}}^{2}\psi(t)\partial_{x_{k}}^{2}\psi(t)\partial_{x_{m}}^{2}\psi(t)|^{2}dt dx \right)^{1/2}
$$
  
+ 
$$
c \sum_{\alpha \in \mathbb{Z}^{d}} \left( \int_{Q_{\alpha}} \int_{I} |R(D_{x}^{V}\psi)_{2\leq |\gamma| \leq s_{0}-1/2}|^{2}dt dx \right)^{1/2}
$$
  

$$
\lesssim \|\psi_{0}\|_{H^{s_{0}}} + T \|\psi\|_{L^{\infty}(I)H^{\frac{d}{3}+2}}^{3}
$$
  
+ 
$$
c \sum_{|\beta|=s_{
$$

where in the last inequality we have chosen  $\delta \gg 1$  such that

$$
(T + cT^{1/2})c^{-3\delta} + T^{\nu}c^{1-2\delta} \lesssim \frac{1}{2}, \quad T = \mathcal{O}(c^{2(r-1)}).
$$
 (251)

Then, we have that for any  $\psi \in Z_I^{\delta}$ 

<span id="page-53-0"></span>
$$
\left(\sum_{\alpha \in \mathbb{Z}^d} \sup_{t \in I} \sup_{x \in Q_{\alpha}} |D_x^2 \psi(t, x)|^2\right)^{1/2}
$$
\n
$$
T \lesssim c^{2(r-1)} \lesssim 1
$$
\n
$$
\lesssim \|\psi_0\|_{H^{s_0}} + c^{d\left(1 - \frac{1}{r}\right)} T \|\psi\|_{L^{\infty}(I)H^{s_0}}^3
$$
\n
$$
\lesssim \|\psi_0\|_{H^{s_0}} + c^{d\left(1 - \frac{1}{r}\right)} T c^{-3\delta}
$$
\n
$$
\lesssim c^{-\delta}, \qquad (252)
$$

where in the last inequality we have chosen  $\delta \gg 1$  such that

$$
c^{d\left(1-\frac{1}{r}\right)-2\delta}T \lesssim 1, \quad T = \mathcal{O}(c^{2(r-1)}).
$$
 (253)

Finally, if for any  $\phi \in Z_I^{\delta}$  we set  $\Lambda_T(\phi)$  as the maximum between the three following quantities,

$$
\sum_{\alpha \in \mathbb{Z}^d} \sup_{t \in I} \sup_{x \in Q_{\alpha}} |D_x^2 \psi(t, x)|^2,
$$
  
\n
$$
\|\phi\|_{L^{\infty}(I)H^{s_0}},
$$
  
\n
$$
c^{-\delta} T^{-\nu} \sum_{|\beta|=s_0+1/2} \sup_{\alpha \in \mathbb{Z}^d} \left( \int_I \int_{Q_{\alpha}} |\partial_x^{\beta} \phi(t, x)|^2 dx dt \right)^{1/2}
$$

we can observe that for any  $\phi_1, \phi_2 \in Z_I^{\delta}$ 

$$
\Lambda_T(\mathscr{F}(\phi_1)-\mathscr{F}(\phi_2))\leq KT^{\nu}c^{-2\delta}\Lambda_T(\phi_1-\phi_2),
$$

where K is a positive constant which does not depend on c. Hence if we choose  $\delta \gg 1$  such that [\(251\)](#page-53-0), [\(249\)](#page-53-1), [\(253\)](#page-54-1) and

$$
KT^{\nu}c^{-2\delta} \le \frac{1}{2} \tag{254}
$$

<span id="page-54-1"></span>,

hold true, we can conclude.

# <span id="page-54-0"></span>**9 Long-time approximation**

Now we study the evolution of the error between the approximate solution  $\psi_a$ , namely the solution of [\(99\)](#page-24-2), and the original solution  $\psi$  of [\(3\)](#page-2-2) for long (that means, *c*-dependent) time intervals. First we prove a result for the linear case, then we consider the approximation of small radiation solutions in the nonlinear case, and finally we make some remarks about the approximation of standing waves and soliton solutions.

# <span id="page-54-2"></span>**9.1 Linear case**

Fix  $r > 1$ , and take  $\psi_0 \in H^{k+k_0}$ , where  $k_0 > 0$  and  $k \gg 1$  are the ones in Theorem [7.](#page-12-0)

Now, we want to estimate the space–time norm of the error  $\delta = \psi - \psi_a$ . In the linear case we can observe that  $\delta$  satisfies

$$
\dot{\delta} = ic \langle \nabla \rangle_c \delta + \frac{1}{c^{2r}} X_{\mathcal{T}^{(r)*}\mathcal{R}^{(r)}}(\psi_a(t), \bar{\psi}_a(t)). \tag{255}
$$

*Proof (Theore[m3\)](#page-4-1)* By applying the Strichartz estimate [\(14\)](#page-6-3) (choose  $p = +\infty$ ,  $q = 2$ ,  $r =$  $+\infty$ , *s* = 2), together with estimate [\(31\)](#page-13-4) for the vector field of the remainder  $\mathcal{R}^{(r)}$ , estimate [\(32\)](#page-13-3) for the canonical transformation  $\mathcal{T}^{(r)}$ , and estimate [\(108\)](#page-27-3) (choose  $p = q = 2$ ), we can deduce Theorem [3.](#page-4-1)

#### **9.2 The nonlinear case: radiation solutions**

Now, assume that we want to recover the approach of Sect. [9.1](#page-54-2) to approximate radiation solutions of the NLKG equation for long (*c*-dependent) timescales.

We pursue such a program by a perturbative argument, considering a small radiation solution  $\psi_r = \eta_{rad,r}$  of the normalized system [\(98\)](#page-24-1) that exists up to times of order  $\mathcal{O}(c^{2(r-1)})$ ,  $r > 1$ .

As an application of Proposition [1,](#page-6-4) we consider the following case. Fix  $r > 1$ , let  $\sigma > 0$ and let  $\psi_r = \eta_{rad}$  be a radiation solution of [\(98\)](#page-24-1), namely such that

$$
\eta_{rad,0} := \eta_{rad}(0) \in H^{k+k_0+\sigma+d/2}(\mathbb{R}^d),\tag{256}
$$

where  $k_0 > 0$  and  $k \gg 1$  are the ones in Theorem [7.](#page-12-0)

Let  $\delta(t)$  be a solution of [\(103\)](#page-25-3); then, by Duhamel formula

$$
\delta(t) := \mathcal{U}(t,0)\delta_0 = e^{itc\langle \nabla \rangle_c}\delta_0 + \int_0^t e^{i(t-s)c\langle \nabla \rangle_c} dP(\psi_a(s))\mathcal{U}(s,0)\delta_0 ds. \tag{257}
$$

Now fix  $T \leq c^{2(r-1)}$ ; we want to estimate the local-in-time norm in the space  $L^{\infty}([0, T])$ *H*<sup>*k*</sup> ( $\mathbb{R}^{d}$ ) of the error  $\delta(t)$ .

By  $(13)$  we can estimate the first term. We can estimate the second term by  $(14)$ : Hence for any (*p*, *q*) Schrödinger-admissible exponents

$$
\left\| \int_{0}^{t} e^{i(t-s)c\langle \nabla \rangle_c} dP(\psi_a(s)) \delta(s) ds \right\|_{L_t^{\infty}([0,T])H_x^k}
$$
  
\n
$$
\lesssim c^{\frac{1}{q} - \frac{1}{p} - \frac{1}{2}} \|\langle \nabla \rangle_c^{\frac{1}{p} - \frac{1}{q} + \frac{1}{2}} dP(\psi_a(t)) \delta(t) \|_{L_t^{p'}([0,T])W_x^{k,q'}}\n\n
$$
\lesssim c^{\frac{1}{q} - \frac{1}{p} - \frac{1}{2}} \|\langle \nabla \rangle_c^{\frac{1}{p} - \frac{1}{q} + \frac{1}{2}} dP(\eta_{rad}(c^2t)) \delta(t) \|_{L_t^{p'}([0,T])W_x^{k,q'}}\n\n+ c^{\frac{1}{q} - \frac{1}{p} - \frac{1}{2}} \|\langle \nabla \rangle_c^{\frac{1}{p} - \frac{1}{q} + \frac{1}{2}} [dP(\psi_a(t)) - dP(\eta_{rad}(c^2t))] \delta(t) \|_{L_t^{p'}([0,T])W_x^{k,q'}}\n\n=: I_p + II_p,
$$
$$

but recalling [\(100\)](#page-25-4) one has that

$$
I_p \lesssim \frac{|\lambda|}{2^{l-1/2}(2l)(2l-1)} c^{\frac{1}{q}-\frac{1}{p}+\frac{1}{2}} \left\| \langle \nabla \rangle_c^{\frac{1}{p}-\frac{1}{q}-\frac{1}{2}} \left[ \left( \frac{c}{\langle \nabla \rangle_c} \right)^{1/2} (\eta_{rad} + \bar{\eta}_{rad}) \right]^{2(l-1)} \delta(t) \right\|_{L_t^{p'}([0,T]) W^{k,q'}_x}.
$$

Now fix a real number  $\rho \in ]0, 1[$ , and choose

$$
p = 2 + \rho,\tag{258}
$$

$$
q = \frac{2dp}{dp - 4} = \frac{4d + 2d\rho}{2d + d\rho - 4} = 2 + \frac{8}{2d - 4 + d\rho},
$$
(259)

we get (since  $\|(c/\langle \nabla \rangle_c)^{\frac{1}{q} - \frac{1}{p} - \frac{1}{2}}\|_{L^{q'} \to L^{q'}} \le 1$ )

$$
I_2 \leq \frac{|\lambda|}{2^{l-1/2}(2l)(2l-1)} \left\| \left[ \left( \frac{c}{\langle \nabla \rangle_c} \right)^{1/2} (\eta_{rad}(c^2 t) + \bar{\eta}_{rad}(c^2 t)) \right]^{2(l-1)} \delta(t) \right\|_{L_t^{2-\frac{\rho}{1+\rho}}([0,T]) W_x^{k,q'}}.
$$

 $\bigcirc$  Springer

Now, since by Hölder inequality

$$
\begin{split} &\left\| \left[ \left( \frac{c}{\langle \nabla \rangle_c} \right)^{1/2} (\eta_{rad}(c^2 t) + \bar{\eta}_{rad}(c^2 t)) \right]^{2(l-1)} \delta(t) \right\|_{L_t^{2-\frac{\rho}{1+\rho}}([0,T]) W_x^{k,q'}} \\ &\leq \left\| \left[ \left( \frac{c}{\langle \nabla \rangle_c} \right)^{1/2} (\eta_{rad}(c^2 t) + \bar{\eta}_{rad}(c^2 t)) \right]^{2(l-1)} \right\|_{L_t^{2-\frac{\rho}{1+\rho}}([0,T]) W_x^{k,d(1+\rho/2)}} \| \delta(t) \|_{L_t^{\infty}([0,T]) H_x^k}, \end{split}
$$

and by Sobolev product theorem (recall that  $l \geq 2$ , and that  $k \gg 1$ ) we can deduce that

$$
\begin{split} &\left\| \left[ \left( \frac{c}{\langle \nabla \rangle_c} \right)^{1/2} \left( \eta_{rad}(c^2 t) + \bar{\eta}_{rad}(c^2 t) \right) \right]^{2(l-1)} \right\|_{L_t^{2-\frac{\rho}{1+\rho}}([0,T]) W_x^{k,d(1+\rho/2)} } \\ &\leq \left[ \int_0^T \left\| \left[ \left( \frac{c}{\langle \nabla \rangle_c} \right)^{1/2} \left( \eta_{rad}(c^2 t) + \bar{\eta}_{rad}(c^2 t) \right) \right] \right\|_{W_x^{k,d(1+\rho/2)}}^{2(l-1)\left(2-\frac{\rho}{1+\rho}\right)} \mathrm{d} t \right]^{ \frac{1}{\left(2-\frac{\rho}{1+\rho}\right)}} \\ &\leq \left\| \eta_{rad}(c^2 t) + \bar{\eta}_{rad}(c^2 t) \right\|_{L_t^{2(l-1)\left(2-\frac{\rho}{1+\rho}\right)}([0,T]) W_x^{k,d(1+\rho/2)} }, \end{split}
$$

but since by Proposition [6](#page-28-2) we have that for any  $\sigma > 0$ 

$$
L_t^{2(l-1)\left(2-\frac{\rho}{1+\rho}\right)}([0,T])W_x^{k,d(1+\rho/2)} \supseteq L_t^{2(l-1)\left(2-\frac{\rho}{1+\rho}\right)}([0,T])M_{d(1+\rho/2),1,x}^k
$$
  
\n
$$
\supseteq L_t^{2(l-1)\left(2-\frac{\rho}{1+\rho}\right)}([0,T])M_{2,1,x}^k
$$
  
\n
$$
\supseteq L_t^{2(l-1)\left(2-\frac{\rho}{1+\rho}\right)}([0,T])H_x^{k+\sigma+d/2}
$$
  
\n
$$
\supseteq L_t^{\infty}([0,T])H_x^{k+\sigma+d/2},
$$

we have that

$$
\|\eta_{rad}\|_{L_t^{2(l-1)}(2-\frac{\rho}{1+\rho})_{([0,T])W_x^{k,d(1+\rho/2)}}}^{\gamma(l-1)} \lesssim T^{\frac{1+\rho}{2+\rho}} \|\eta_{rad}\|_{L_t^{\infty}([0,T])H_x^{k+\sigma+d/2}}^{2(l-1)},\tag{260}
$$

but by Corollary [1](#page-29-2) the right-hand side of  $(260)$  is finite and does not depend on  $c \ge 1$  for

<span id="page-56-0"></span>
$$
\|\eta_{rad,0}\|_{H_x^{k+k_0+\sigma+d/2}} \lesssim c^{-\alpha},\tag{261}
$$

$$
\alpha > \max\left(\delta_0(d, l, r), \delta_1(d, l, r), \frac{r - 1}{l - 1}\right) := \alpha^*(d, l, r).
$$
 (262)

where  $c \ge c_0$  is sufficiently large, and where  $\delta_0(d, l, r)$  and  $\delta_1(d, l, r)$  are defined in Corollary [1.](#page-29-2)

Furthermore, via [\(32\)](#page-13-3) one can show that there exists  $c_{r,k} > 0$  sufficiently large such that for  $c \geq c_{r,k}$  the term  $II_2$  can be bounded by  $\frac{1}{c^2} I_2$ .

This means that we can estimate the  $L^\infty([0, T])H^k$  norm of the error only for a small (with respect to *c*) radiation solution, which is the statement of Proposition [16.](#page-56-1)

<span id="page-56-1"></span>To summarize, we get the following result.

**Proposition 16** *Consider* [\(58\)](#page-18-3) *on*  $\mathbb{R}^d$ ,  $d \ge 2$ *. Let r* > 1, *and fix k*<sub>1</sub>  $\gg$  1*. Assume that*  $l \ge 2$  *and r* < *<sup>d</sup>* <sup>2</sup> (*l*−1)*. Then* ∃ *k*<sup>0</sup> = *k*0(*r*) > 0 *such that for any k* ≥ *k*<sup>1</sup> *and for any* σ > 0 *the following*

*holds: Consider the solution*  $\eta_{rad}$  *of* [\(98\)](#page-24-1) *with the initial datum*  $\eta_{rad,0} \in H^{k+k_0+\sigma+d/2}(\mathbb{R}^d)$ *, and call* δ *the difference between the solution of the approximate equation* [\(99\)](#page-24-2) *and the original solution of the Hamilton equation for* [\(58\)](#page-18-3). Assume that  $\delta_0 := \delta(0)$  *satisfies* 

$$
\|\delta_0\|_{H^k_x} \lesssim \frac{1}{c^2}.
$$

*Then there exist*  $\alpha^* := \alpha^*(d, l, r) > 0$  *and there exists*  $c^* := c^*(r, k) > 1$ , *such that for any*  $\alpha > \alpha^*$  *and for any*  $c > c^*$ *, if*  $\eta_{rad,0}$  *satisfies* 

$$
\|\eta_{rad,0}\|_{H^{k+k_0+\sigma+d/2}}\lesssim c^{-\alpha},
$$

*then*

$$
\sup_{t\in[0,T]}\|\delta(t)\|_{H_x^k}\lesssim \frac{1}{c^2},\quad T\lesssim c^{2(r-1)}.
$$

By exploiting [\(32\)](#page-13-3) and Proposition [16,](#page-56-1) we obtain Theorem [4.](#page-5-0)

#### **9.3 The nonlinear case: standing waves solutions**

Now we consider the approximation of another important type of solutions, the so-called standing waves solutions.

The issue of (in)stability of standing waves and solitons has a long history: For the NLS equation and the NLKG the orbital stability of standing waves has been discussed first in [\[53\]](#page-69-15); for the NLS, the orbital stability of one soliton solutions has been treated in [\[26](#page-68-24)], while the asymptotic stability has been discussed in  $[20]$  for one soliton solutions, and in  $[48]$  and [\[47\]](#page-69-17) for N-solitons. For the higher-order Schrödinger equation we mention [\[37\]](#page-68-10), which deals with orbital stability of standing waves for fourth-order NLS-type equations. For the NLKG equation, the instability of solitons and standing waves has been studied in [\[29](#page-68-26)[,45](#page-69-7)[,54\]](#page-69-18).

As for the case of radiation solution, we should fix  $r \geq 1$ , and consider a standing wave solution  $\psi_r$  of [\(98\)](#page-24-1), namely of the form

$$
\psi_r(t,x) = e^{it\omega} \eta_\omega(x),\tag{263}
$$

where  $\omega \in \mathbb{R}$ , and  $\eta_{\omega} \in \mathscr{S}(\mathbb{R}^d)$  solves

$$
-\omega \eta_{\omega} = X_{H_{simp}}(\eta_{\omega}).
$$

*Remark 25* Of course the existence of a standing wave for the simplified equation [\(98\)](#page-24-1) is a far from trivial question. For  $r = 1$  [\[26\]](#page-68-24) deals with the NLS equation; for  $r \ge 2$ , [\[37\]](#page-68-10) deals with the one-dimensional fourth-order NLS-type equation.

We also point out that in the case of a standing wave solution, if  $\delta(t)$  satisfies [\(103\)](#page-25-3), then by Duhamel formula

$$
\dot{\delta} = ic \langle \nabla \rangle_c \delta(t) + dP(\psi_a(t), \bar{\psi}_a(t)) \delta(t).
$$

Since

$$
P(e^{it\omega}\eta_{\omega},e^{-it\omega}\bar{\eta}_{\omega})=2^{l-1/2}\left(\frac{c}{\langle\nabla\rangle_c}\right)^{1/2}\left[\left(\frac{c}{\langle\nabla\rangle_c}\right)^{1/2}Re(e^{it\omega}\eta_{\omega})\right]^{2l-1},
$$

 $\mathcal{L}$  Springer

we have that

$$
dP(\eta_{\omega}, \bar{\eta}_{\omega})e^{it\omega}h = 2^{l-1/2} \left(\frac{c}{\langle \nabla \rangle_c}\right) \left[ \left(\frac{c}{\langle \nabla \rangle_c}\right)^{1/2} \cos(\omega t)\eta_{\omega} \right]^{2(l-1)} (e^{it\omega}h + e^{-it\omega}\bar{h}),
$$

and by setting  $\delta = e^{-it\omega}h$ , one gets

<span id="page-58-0"></span>
$$
-i\dot{h} = (c\langle \nabla \rangle_c + \omega)h + 2^{l-1/2}\cos^{2(l-1)}(\omega t) \left(\frac{c}{\langle \nabla \rangle_c}\right) \left[ \left(\frac{c}{\langle \nabla \rangle_c}\right)^{1/2} \eta_\omega \right]^{2(l-1)} (h + e^{-2it\omega}\bar{h})
$$
\n(264)

$$
+\left[dP(\psi_a(s),\bar{\psi}_a(s))-dP(\eta_\omega,\bar{\eta}_\omega)\right]h.\tag{265}
$$

Equation [\(264\)](#page-58-0) is a Salpeter spinless equation with a periodic time-dependent potential; therefore, in order to get some information about the error, one would need the corresponding Strichartz estimates for Eq. [\(264\)](#page-58-0). Unfortunately, in the literature of dispersive estimates there are only few results for PDEs with time-dependent potentials, and the majority of them is of perturbative nature; for the Schrödinger equation, we mention [\[22](#page-68-27)[,25\]](#page-68-28), in which Strichartz estimates are proved in a nonperturbative framework.

*Remark 26* By using Proposition [3](#page-25-2) one can show that the NLKG can be approximated by the simplified equation [\(3\)](#page-2-2) locally uniformly in time, up to an error of order  $\mathcal{O}(c^{-2r})$ .

*Remark 27* One could ask whether one could get a similar result for more general (in particular, moving) soliton solution of [\(98\)](#page-24-1). Apart from the issue of existence and stability for such solutions, one can check that, provided that a moving soliton solution for [\(98\)](#page-24-1) exists, then the error  $\delta(t)$  must solve a [\(264\)](#page-58-0)-type equation, namely a spinless Salpeter equation with a time-dependent moving potential. Unfortunately, since Eq. [\(264\)](#page-58-0), unlike KG, is not manifestly covariant, one cannot apparently reduce to an analogue equation, and once again one cannot justify the approximation over the  $\mathcal{O}(1)$  timescale.

**Acknowledgements** The author would like to thank Professor Dario Bambusi, for introducing him to the problem and for many valuable discussions and suggestions.

# **A Proof of Lemma [4](#page-15-0)**

In order to normalize system [\(33\)](#page-13-1), we used an adaptation of Theorem 4.4 in [\[2\]](#page-67-3). The result is based on the method of Lie transform that we will recall in the following.

Let  $k \geq k_1$  and  $p \in (1, +\infty)$  be fixed.

Given an auxiliary function  $\chi$  analytic on  $W^{k,p}$ , we consider the auxiliary differential equation

$$
\dot{\psi} = i \nabla_{\bar{\psi}} \chi(\psi, \bar{\psi}) =: X_{\chi}(\psi, \bar{\psi})
$$
\n(266)

<span id="page-58-1"></span>and denote by  $\Phi^t_{\chi}$  its time-*t* flow. A simple application of Cauchy inequality gives

**Lemma 17** *Let*  $\chi$  *and its symplectic gradient be analytic in*  $B_{k,p}(R)$ *. Fix*  $\delta$  < R, *and assume that*

$$
\sup_{B_{k,p}(R-\delta)}\|X_{\chi}(\psi,\psi)\|_{k,p}\leq\delta.
$$

 $\circled{2}$  Springer

*Then, if we consider the time-t flow*  $\Phi_{\chi}^{t}$  *of*  $X_{\chi}$  *we have that for*  $|t| \leq 1$ 

$$
\sup_{B_{k,p}(R-\delta)} \|\Phi^t_{\chi}(\psi,\bar{\psi}) - (\psi,\bar{\psi})\|_{k,p} \leq \sup_{B_{k,p}(R-\delta)} \|X_{\chi}(\psi,\bar{\psi})\|_{k,p}.
$$

**Definition 1** The map  $\Phi := \Phi^1_\chi$  will be called the *Lie transform* generated by  $\chi$ .

*Remark 28* Given *G* analytic on  $W^{k,p}$ , consider the differential equation

<span id="page-59-0"></span>
$$
\dot{\psi} = X_G(\psi, \bar{\psi}),\tag{267}
$$

where by  $X_G$  we denote the vector field of  $G$ . Now define

$$
\Phi^* G(\phi, \bar{\phi}) := G \circ \Phi(\psi, \bar{\psi}).
$$

In the new variables  $(\phi, \bar{\phi})$  defined by  $(\psi, \bar{\psi}) = \Phi(\phi, \bar{\phi})$  Eq. [\(267\)](#page-59-0) is equivalent to

$$
\dot{\phi} = X_{\phi^*G}(\phi, \bar{\phi}).\tag{268}
$$

Using the relation

$$
\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}(\Phi_\chi^t)^*G = (\Phi_\chi^t)^*\{\chi, G\},\,
$$

we formally get

$$
\Phi^* G = \sum_{l=0}^{\infty} G_l,
$$
\n(269)

<span id="page-59-1"></span>
$$
G_0 := G,\t\t(270)
$$

$$
G_l := \frac{1}{l} \{ \chi, G_{l-1} \}, \quad l \ge 1. \tag{271}
$$

In order to estimate the terms appearing in  $(269)$  we exploit the following results

**Lemma 18** *Let*  $R > 0$ *, and assume that*  $\chi$ *, G are analytic on*  $B_{k,p}(R)$ *. Then, for any d*  $\in$  (0, *R*) *we have that* { $\chi$ , *G*} *is analytic on*  $B_{k,p}(R-d)$ *, and* 

<span id="page-59-2"></span>
$$
\sup_{B_{k,p}(R-d)} \|X_{\{\chi,G\}}(\psi,\bar{\psi})\|_{k,p} \lesssim \frac{2}{d}.
$$
 (272)

**Lemma 19** *Let*  $R > 0$ *, and assume that*  $\chi$ *, G are analytic on*  $B_{k,p}(R)$ *. Let*  $l \geq 1$ *, and consider G*<sub>*l*</sub> *as defined in* [\(269\)](#page-59-1)*; for any*  $d$  ∈ (0, *R*)*, we have that*  $G_l$  *is analytic on*  $B_{k,p}$  (*R* − *d*)*, and* 

$$
\sup_{B_{k,p}(R-d)} \|X_{G_l}(\psi, \bar{\psi})\|_{k,p} \lesssim \left(\frac{2e}{d}\right)^l. \tag{273}
$$

*Proof* Fix *l*, and denote  $\delta := d/l$ . We look for a sequence  $C_m^{(l)}$  such that

$$
\sup_{B_{k,p}(R-m\delta)}\|X_{G_m}(\psi,\bar{\psi})\|_{k,p}\lesssim C_m^{(l)},\quad \forall m\leq l.
$$

 $\circledcirc$  Springer

By [\(272\)](#page-59-2) we can define the sequence

$$
C_0^{(l)} := \sup_{B_{k,p}(R)} \|X_G(\psi, \bar{\psi})\|_{k,p},
$$
  
\n
$$
C_m^{(l)} = \frac{2}{\delta m} C_{m-1}^{(l)} \sup_{B_{k,p}(R)} \|X_\chi(\psi, \bar{\psi})\|_{k,p}
$$
  
\n
$$
= \frac{2l}{dm} C_{m-1}^{(l)} \sup_{B_{k,p}(R)} \|X_\chi(\psi, \bar{\psi})\|_{k,p}.
$$

One has

$$
C_l^{(l)} = \frac{1}{l!} \left( \frac{2l}{d} \sup_{B_{k,p}(R)} \| X_{\chi}(\psi, \bar{\psi}) \|_{k,p} \right)^l \sup_{B_{k,p}(R)} \| X_G(\psi, \bar{\psi}) \|_{k,p},
$$

and by using the inequality  $l^l < l!e^l$  we can conclude.

*Remark 29* Let  $k \geq k_1$ ,  $p \in (1, +\infty)$ , and assume that  $\chi$ , *F* are analytic on  $B_{k,p}(R)$ . Fix  $d \in (0, R)$ , and assume also that

$$
\sup_{B_{k,p}(R)} \|X_{\chi}(\psi,\psi)\|_{k,p} \le d/3,
$$

Then for  $|t| \leq 1$ 

$$
\sup_{B_{k,p}(R-d)} \|X_{(\Phi_X^t)^* F - F}(\psi, \bar{\psi})\|_{k,p} = \sup_{B_{k,p}(R-d)} \|X_{F \circ \Phi_X^t - F}(\psi, \bar{\psi})\|_{k,p}
$$
\n(274)  
\n
$$
\leq \frac{272}{d} \sup_{B_{k,p}(R)} \|X_X(\psi, \bar{\psi})\|_{k,p} \sup_{B_{k,p}(R)} \|X_F(\psi, \bar{\psi})\|_{k,p}.
$$
\n(275)

<span id="page-60-3"></span>**Lemma 20** *Let*  $k \geq k_1$ ,  $p \in (1, +\infty)$ *, and assume that G is analytic on*  $B_{k,p}(R)$ *, and that h*<sup>0</sup> *satisfies PER. Then there exists* χ *analytic on Bk*,*p*(*R*) *and Z analytic on Bk*,*p*(*R*) *with Z in normal form, namely*  $\{h_0, Z\} = 0$ *, such that* 

$$
\{h_0, \chi\} + G = Z. \tag{276}
$$

*Furthermore, we have the following estimates on the vector fields*

$$
\sup_{B_{k,p}(R)} \|X_Z(\psi, \bar{\psi})\|_{k,p} \le \sup_{B_{k,p}(R)} \|X_G(\psi, \bar{\psi})\|_{k,p},
$$
\n(277)

$$
\sup_{B_{k,p}(R)} \|X_{\chi}(\psi, \bar{\psi})\|_{k,p} \lesssim \sup_{B_{k,p}(R)} \|X_G(\psi, \bar{\psi})\|_{k,p}.
$$
 (278)

*Proof* One can check that the solution of [\(276\)](#page-60-1) is

$$
\chi(\psi, \bar{\psi}) = \frac{1}{T} \int_0^T t \left[ G(\Phi^t(\psi, \bar{\psi})) - Z(\Phi^t(\psi, \bar{\psi})) \right] dt,
$$

<span id="page-60-2"></span><span id="page-60-1"></span><sup>2</sup> Springer

<span id="page-60-0"></span>
$$
\Box
$$

with  $T = 2\pi$ . Indeed,

$$
\{h_0, \chi\}(\psi, \bar{\psi}) = \frac{d}{ds}_{|s=0} \chi(\Phi^s(\psi, \bar{\psi}))
$$
  
\n
$$
= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} t \frac{d}{ds}_{|s=0} \left[ G(\Phi^{t+s}(\psi, \bar{\psi})) - Z(\Phi^{t+s}(\psi, \bar{\psi})) \right] dt
$$
  
\n
$$
= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} t \frac{d}{dt} \left[ G(\Phi^t(\psi, \bar{\psi})) - Z(\Phi^t(\psi, \bar{\psi})) \right] dt
$$
  
\n
$$
= \frac{1}{2\pi} \left[ t G(\Phi^t(\psi, \bar{\psi})) - t Z(\Phi^t(\psi, \bar{\psi})) \right]_{t=0}^{2\pi}
$$
  
\n
$$
- \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} \left[ G(\Phi^t(\psi, \bar{\psi})) - Z(\Phi^t(\psi, \bar{\psi})) \right] dt
$$
  
\n
$$
= G(\psi, \bar{\psi}) - Z(\psi, \bar{\psi}).
$$

Finally, [\(277\)](#page-60-2) follows from the fact that

$$
X_{\chi}(\psi, \bar{\psi}) = \frac{1}{T} \int_0^T t \, \Phi^{-t} \circ X_{G-Z}(\Phi^t(\psi, \bar{\psi})) \mathrm{d}t
$$

by applying property  $(25)$ .

**Lemma 21** *Let*  $k \geq k_1$ ,  $p \in (1, +\infty)$ *, and assume that G is analytic on*  $B_{k,p}(R)$ *, and that h<sub>0</sub> satisfies PER. Let*  $\chi$  *be analytic on*  $B_{k,p}(R)$ *, and assume that it solves* [\(276\)](#page-60-1)*. For any*  $l \geq 1$ *denote by h*<sub>0,*l*</sub> *the functions defined recursively as in* [\(269\)](#page-59-1) *from h*<sub>0</sub>*. Then for any d*  $\in$  (0*, R*) *one has that*  $h_{0,l}$  *is analytic on*  $B_{k,p}(R-d)$ *, and* 

$$
\sup_{B_{k,p}(R-d)} \|X_{h_{0,l}}(\psi,\bar{\psi})\|_{k,p} \le 2 \sup_{B_{k,p}(R)} \|X_G(\psi,\bar{\psi})\|_{k,p} \left(\frac{5}{d} \sup_{B_{k,p}(R)} \|X_{\chi}(\psi,\bar{\psi})\|_{k,p}\right)^l.
$$
\n(279)

*Proof* By using [\(276\)](#page-60-1) one gets that  $h_{0,1} = Z - G$  is analytic on  $B_{k,p}(R)$ . Then by exploiting (275) one gets the result [\(275\)](#page-60-0) one gets the result.

<span id="page-61-3"></span>**Lemma 22** *Let*  $k_1 \gg 1$ *,*  $p \in (1, +\infty)$ *,*  $R > 0$ *, m*  $\geq 0$ *, and consider the Hamiltonian* 

$$
H^{(m)}(\psi, \bar{\psi}) = h_0(\psi, \bar{\psi}) + \varepsilon \hat{h}(\psi, \bar{\psi}) + \varepsilon Z^{(m)}(\psi, \bar{\psi}) + \varepsilon^{m+1} F^{(m)}(\psi, \bar{\psi}).
$$
 (280)

*Assume that*  $h_0$  *satisfies PER and INV, that*  $\hat{h}$  *satisfies NF, and that* 

<span id="page-61-2"></span><span id="page-61-1"></span><span id="page-61-0"></span>
$$
\sup_{B_{k,p}(R)} \|X_{\hat{h}}(\psi, \bar{\psi})\|_{k,p} \le F_0,
$$
  
\n
$$
\sup_{B_{k,p}(R)} \|X_{F^{(0)}}(\psi, \bar{\psi})\|_{k,p} \le F.
$$

*Fix*  $\delta$  < *R*/(*m* + 1)*, and assume also that*  $Z^{(m)}$  *are analytic on*  $B_{k,p}(R - m\delta)$ *, and that* 

$$
\sup_{B_{k,p}(R-m\delta)} \|X_{Z^{(0)}}(\psi, \psi)\|_{k,p} = 0,
$$
  
\n
$$
\sup_{B_{k,p}(R-m\delta)} \|X_{Z^{(m)}}(\psi, \bar{\psi})\|_{k,p} \le F \sum_{i=0}^{m-1} \varepsilon^i K_s^i, \quad m \ge 1,
$$
  
\n
$$
\sup_{B_{k,p}(R-m\delta)} \|X_{F^{(m)}}(\psi, \bar{\psi})\|_{k,p} \le F K_s^m, \quad m \ge 1,
$$
\n(281)

 $\circled{2}$  Springer

 $\text{with } K_s := \frac{2\pi}{\delta} (18F + 5F_0).$ 

*Then, if*  $\epsilon K_s < 1/2$  *there exists a canonical transformation*  $\mathscr{T}_{\epsilon}^{(m)}$  *analytic on*  $B_{k,p}(R (m + 1)\delta$ ) *such that* 

$$
\sup_{B_{k,p}(R-m\delta)} \|\mathcal{T}_{\varepsilon}^{(m)}(\psi,\bar{\psi}) - (\psi,\bar{\psi})\|_{k,p} \le 2\pi \varepsilon^{m+1} F,\tag{282}
$$

 $H^{(m+1)} := H^{(m)} \circ \mathcal{I}^{(m)}$  *has the form* [\(280\)](#page-61-0) *and satisfies* [\(281\)](#page-61-1) *with m replaced by m* + 1*.* 

*Proof* The key point of the lemma is to look for  $\mathcal{I}_{\varepsilon}^{(m)}$  as the time-one map of the Hamiltonian vector field of an analytic function  $\varepsilon^{m+1} \chi_m$ . Hence consider the differential equation

<span id="page-62-1"></span><span id="page-62-0"></span>
$$
(\dot{\psi}, \dot{\bar{\psi}}) = X_{\varepsilon^{m+1} \chi_m}(\psi, \bar{\psi}); \tag{283}
$$

by standard theory we have that, if  $||X_{\varepsilon^{m+1}\chi_m}||_{B_{k,p}(R-m\delta)}$  is sufficiently small and  $(\psi_0, \psi_0) \in$  $B_{k,p}(R - (m+1)\delta)$ , then the solution of [\(283\)](#page-62-0) exists for  $|t| \leq 1$ . Therefore, we can define  $\mathscr{T}_{m,\varepsilon}^t$  :  $B_{k,p}(R-(m+1)\delta) \to B_{k,p}(R-m\delta)$ , and in particular the corresponding time-one  $\mathfrak{m}$ ap  $\mathscr{T}_{\varepsilon}^{(m)} := \mathscr{T}_{m,\varepsilon}^1$ , which is an analytic canonical transformation,  $\varepsilon^{m+1}$ -close to the identity. We have

$$
(\mathcal{I}_{\varepsilon}^{(m+1)})^* (h_0 + \varepsilon \hat{h} + \varepsilon Z^{(m)} + \varepsilon^{m+1} F^{(m)}) = h_0 + \varepsilon \hat{h} + \varepsilon Z^{(m)}
$$

$$
+ \varepsilon^{m+1} \left[ \{ \chi_m, h_0 \} + F^{(m)} \right]
$$

$$
+ \left( h_0 \circ \mathcal{I}^{(m+1)} - h_0 - \varepsilon^{m+1} \{ \chi_m, h_0 \} \right) + \varepsilon (\hat{h} \circ \mathcal{I}^{(m+1)} - \hat{h}) \tag{284}
$$

$$
+ (n_0 \circ \mathcal{I}^{(m+1)} - n_0 - \varepsilon^{m+1} \{ \chi_m, n_0 \}) + \varepsilon (n_0 \circ \mathcal{I}^{(m+1)} - n) \tag{284}
$$

$$
+ \varepsilon \left( Z^{(m)} \circ \mathcal{I}^{(m+1)} - Z^{(m)} \right) + \varepsilon^{m+1} \left( F^{(m)} \circ \mathcal{I}^{(m+1)} - F^{(m)} \right). \tag{285}
$$

It is easy to see that the first three terms are already normalized, that the term in the second line is the nonnormalized part of order m+1 that will vanish through the choice of a suitable  $\chi_m$ , and that the last lines contains all the terms of order higher than m+1.

Now we want to determine  $\chi_m$  in order to solve the so-called homological equation

$$
\{\chi_m, h_0\} + F^{(m)} = Z_{m+1},
$$

with  $Z_{m+1}$  in normal form. The existence of  $\chi_m$  and  $Z_{m+1}$  is ensured by Lemma [20,](#page-60-3) and by applying [\(277\)](#page-60-2) and the inductive hypothesis we get

$$
\sup_{B_{k,p}(R-m\delta)} \|X_{\chi_m}(\psi,\bar{\psi})\|_{k,p} \le 2\pi F,\tag{286}
$$

$$
\sup_{B_{k,p}(R-m\delta)} \|X_{Z_{m+1}}(\psi, \bar{\psi})\|_{k,p} \le 2\pi F. \tag{287}
$$

Now define  $Z^{(m+1)} := Z^{(m)} + \varepsilon^m Z_{m+1}$ , and notice that by Lemma [17](#page-58-1) we can deduce the estimate of  $X_{Z^{(m+1)}}$  on  $B_{k,p}(R-(m+1)\delta)$  and [\(282\)](#page-62-1) at level  $m+1$ . Next, set  $\varepsilon^{m+2}F^{(m+1)} :=$  $(286) + (287)$ . Then we can use  $(275)$  and  $(279)$ , in order to get

 $\circled{2}$  Springer

$$
\sup_{B_{k,p}(R-(m+1)\delta)} \|X_{\varepsilon^{m+2} F^{(m+1)}}(\psi, \bar{\psi})\|_{k,p}
$$
\n
$$
\leq \left(\frac{10}{\delta} \varepsilon^m K_s^m \varepsilon F + \frac{5}{\delta} \varepsilon F_0 + \frac{5}{\delta} \varepsilon F \sum_{i=0}^{m-1} \varepsilon^i K_s^i + \frac{5}{\delta} \varepsilon F \varepsilon^m K_s^m\right) \varepsilon^{m+1} \sup_{B_{k,p}(R-m\delta)} \|X_{\chi_m}(\psi, \bar{\psi})\|_{k,p}
$$
\n
$$
= \varepsilon^{m+2} \left(\frac{10}{\delta} \varepsilon^m K_s^m F + \frac{5}{\delta} F_0 + \frac{5}{\delta} F \sum_{i=0}^{m-1} \varepsilon^i K_s^i + \frac{5}{\delta} F \varepsilon^m K_s^m\right) \sup_{B_{k,p}(R-m\delta)} \|X_{\chi_m}(\psi, \bar{\psi})\|_{k,p}.
$$
\n(289)

If  $m = 0$ , then the third term is not present, and  $(289)$  reads

<span id="page-63-0"></span>
$$
\sup_{B_{k,p}(R-\delta)}\|X_{\varepsilon^2 F^{(1)}}(\psi,\bar{\psi})\|_{k,p}\leq\varepsilon^2\left(\frac{15}{\delta}F+\frac{5}{\delta}F\right)2\pi F<\varepsilon^2 K_s F.
$$

If  $m \ge 1$ , we exploit the smallness condition  $\epsilon K_s < 1/2$ , and [\(289\)](#page-63-0) reads

$$
\sup_{B_{k,p}(R-(m+1)\delta)}\|X_{\varepsilon^{m+2}F^{(m+1)}}(\psi,\bar{\psi})\|_{k,p} < \left(\frac{18}{\delta}\varepsilon F + \frac{5}{\delta}\varepsilon F_0\right)2\pi \varepsilon F\varepsilon^m K_s^m = \varepsilon^{m+2} F K_s^{m+1}.
$$

Now fix  $R > 0$ .

*Proof (Lemma [4\)](#page-15-0)* The Hamiltonian [\(33\)](#page-13-1) satisfies the assumptions of Lemma [22](#page-61-3) with  $m = 0$ ,  $F_{N,r}$  in place of  $F^{(0)}$  and  $h_{N,r}$  in place of  $\hat{h}$ ,  $F = K_{k,p}^{(F,r)} r 2^{2Nr}$ ,  $F_0 = K_{k,p}^{(h,r)} r 2^{2Nr}$ . (For simplicity we will continue to denote by  $F$  and  $F_0$  the last two quantities.) So we apply Lemma [22](#page-61-3) with  $\delta = R/4$ , provided that

<span id="page-63-1"></span>
$$
\frac{8\pi}{R}(18F+5F_0)\varepsilon < \frac{1}{2},
$$

which is true due to [\(44\)](#page-15-1). Hence there exists an analytic canonical transformation  $\mathcal{T}_{\varepsilon,N}^{(1)}$ :  $B_{k,p}(3R/4) \rightarrow B_{k,p}(R)$  with

$$
\sup_{B_{k,p}(3R/4)} \|\mathscr{T}_{\varepsilon,N}^{(1)}(\psi,\bar{\psi}) - (\psi,\bar{\psi})\|_{k,p} \leq 2\pi F \,\varepsilon,
$$

such that

$$
H_{N,r} \circ \mathcal{T}_{\varepsilon,N}^{(1)} = h_0 + \varepsilon h_{N,r} + \varepsilon Z_N^{(1)} + \varepsilon^2 \mathcal{R}_N^{(1)},
$$
\n(290)

$$
Z_N^{(1)} := \langle F_{N,r} \rangle, \n\varepsilon^2 \mathcal{R}_N^{(1)} := \varepsilon^2 F^{(1)}
$$
\n(291)

$$
= (h_0 \circ \mathcal{I}_{\varepsilon,N}^{(1)} - h_0 - \varepsilon \{ \chi_1, h_0 \}) + \varepsilon (\hat{h}_{N,r} \circ \mathcal{I}_{\varepsilon,N}^{(1)} - \hat{h}_{N,r}) + \varepsilon \left( Z_N^{(1)} \circ \mathcal{I}_{\varepsilon,N}^{(1)} - Z_N^{(1)} \right) + \varepsilon^2 \left( F_{N,r} \circ \mathcal{I}_{\varepsilon,N}^{(1)} - F_{N,r} \right)
$$
(292)

$$
+ \varepsilon^2 \left( F_{N,r} \circ \mathcal{F}_{\varepsilon,N}^{(1)} - F_{N,r} \right), \tag{292}
$$

$$
\sup_{B_{k,p}(3R/4)} \|X_{h_{N,r} + Z_N^{(1)}}(\psi, \psi)\|_{k,p} \le F_0 + F =: \tilde{\sigma} F_0,
$$
\n(293)

$$
\sup_{B_{k,p}(3R/4)} \|X_{\mathscr{R}_N^{(1)}}(\psi,\bar{\psi})\|_{k,p} \le \frac{8\pi}{R}(18F + 5F_0)F =: \tilde{\sigma}F. \tag{294}
$$

Again [\(290\)](#page-63-1) satisfies the assumptions of Lemma [22](#page-61-3) with  $m = 0$ , and  $h_{N,r} + Z_N^{(1)}$  and  $\mathcal{R}_N^{(1)}$ in place of  $F^{(0)}$  and  $\hat{h}$ .

Now fix  $\delta := \delta(R) = \frac{R}{4r}$ , and apply *r* times Lemma [22;](#page-61-3) we get an Hamiltonian of the form  $(45)$ , such that

$$
\sup_{B_{k,p}(R/2)} \|X_{Z_N^{(r)}}(\psi, \bar{\psi})\|_{k,p} \le 2\tilde{\sigma} F,\tag{295}
$$

$$
\sup_{B_{k,p}(R/2)} \|X_{\mathcal{R}_N^{(r)}}(\psi,\bar{\psi})\|_{k,p} \le \tilde{\sigma} F. \tag{296}
$$

<span id="page-64-0"></span> $\Box$ 

# **B Interpolation theory for relativistic Sobolev spaces**

In this section we show an analogue of Theorem 6.4.5 (7) in  $[11]$  for the relativistic Sobolev spaces  $\mathcal{W}_c^{k,p}$ ,  $k \in \mathbb{R}$ ,  $1 < p < +\infty$ . We recall that

$$
\mathscr{W}_c^{k,p}(\mathbb{R}^3) := \left\{ u \in L^p : \|u\|_{\mathscr{W}_c^{k,p}} := \|c^{-k} \langle \nabla \rangle_c^k u\|_{L^p} < +\infty \right\}, \quad k \in \mathbb{R}, \quad 1 < p < +\infty.
$$

In order to state the main result of this section, we exploit notations and well-known results coming from complex interpolation theory. (See [\[11\]](#page-67-11) for a detailed introduction to this topic.)

In order to study the relativistic Sobolev spaces, we have to recall the notion of Fourier multipliers.

**Definition 2** Let  $1 < p < +\infty$ , and  $\rho \in \mathcal{S}'$ . We call  $\rho$  a *Fourier multiplier* on  $L^p(\mathbb{R}^d)$  if the convolution  $(\mathcal{F}^{-1}\rho) * f \in L^p(\mathbb{R}^d)$  for all  $f \in L^p(\mathbb{R}^d)$ , and if

$$
\sup_{\|f\|_{L^p} = 1} \|(\mathcal{F}^{-1}\rho) * f\|_{L^p} < +\infty.
$$
 (297)

The linear space of all such  $\rho$  is denoted by  $M_p$  and is endowed with the above norm [\(297\)](#page-64-0).

One can check that for any  $p \in (1, +\infty)$  one has  $M_p = M_{p'}$  (where  $1/p + 1/p' = 1$ ), and that by Parseval's formula  $M_2 = L^\infty$ . Furthermore, by Riesz–Thorin theorem one gets that for any  $\rho \in M_{p_0} \cap M_{p_1}$  and for any  $\theta \in (0, 1)$ 

$$
\|\rho\|_{M_p} \le \|\rho\|_{M_{p_0}}^{1-\theta} \|\rho\|_{M_{p_1}}^{\theta}, \quad \frac{1}{p} = \frac{1-\theta}{p_0} + \frac{\theta}{p_1}.
$$
 (298)

In particular, one can deduce that  $|| \cdot ||_{M_p}$  decreases with  $p \in (1, 2]$ , and that  $M_p \subset M_q$  for any  $1 < p < q \leq 2$ .

More generally, if  $H_0$  and  $H_1$  are Hilbert spaces, one can introduce a similar definition of Fourier multiplier. We use the notation  $\mathscr{S}'(H_0, H_1)$  in order to denote the space of all linear continuous maps from  $\mathscr{S}(\mathbb{R}^d, H_0)$  to  $H_1$ .

**Definition 3** Let  $1 < p < +\infty$ , let  $H_0$  and  $H_1$  be two Hilbert spaces, and consider  $\rho \in$  $\mathscr{S}'(H_0, H_1)$ . We call  $\rho$  a *Fourier multiplier* if the convolution ( $\mathscr{F}^{-1}\rho$ )  $* f \in L^p(H_1)$  for all  $f \in L^p(H_0)$ , and if

$$
\sup_{\|f\|_{L^p(H_0)}=1} \|(\mathcal{F}^{-1}\rho)*f\|_{L^p(H_1)} < +\infty.
$$
\n(299)

The linear space of all such  $\rho$  is denoted by  $M_p(H_0, H_1)$ , and is endowed with the above norm [\(299\)](#page-64-1).

<span id="page-64-1"></span> $\circled{2}$  Springer

Next we recall *Mihlin multiplier theorem* (Theorem 6.1.6 in [\[11\]](#page-67-11)).

**Theorem 9** *Let*  $H_0$  *and*  $H_1$  *be Hilbert spaces, and assume that*  $\rho : \mathbb{R}^d \to L(H_0, H_1)$  *be such that*

$$
|\xi|^{\alpha} \| D^{\alpha} \rho(\xi) \|_{L(H_0, H_1)} \leq K, \quad \forall \xi \in R^d, |\alpha| \leq L
$$

*for some integer L >*  $d/2$ *. Then*  $\rho \in M_p(H_0, H_1)$  *for any*  $1 < p < +\infty$ *, and* 

 $\|\rho\|_{M_p} \le C_p K$ ,  $1 < p < +\infty$ .

Now, recall the Littlewood–Paley functions  $(\phi_i)_{i>0}$  defined in [\(24\)](#page-11-3), and introduce the maps  $\mathscr{J}: \mathscr{S}' \to \mathscr{S}'$  and  $\mathscr{P}: \mathscr{S}' \to \mathscr{S}'$  via formulas

$$
(\mathscr{J}f)_j := \phi_j * f, \quad j \ge 0,
$$
\n(300)

$$
\mathscr{P}g := \sum_{j\geq 0} \tilde{\sigma}\phi_j * g_j, \quad j \geq 0,
$$
\n(301)

where  $g = (g_j)_{j \geq 0}$  with  $g_j \in \mathcal{S}'$  for all *j*, and

$$
\tilde{\sigma}\phi_0 := \phi_0 + \phi_1, \n\tilde{\sigma}\phi_j := \phi_{j-1} + \phi_j + \phi_{j+1}, \quad j \ge 1.
$$

One can check that  $\mathcal{P} \circ \mathcal{J} f = f \forall f \in \mathcal{S}'$ , since  $\tilde{\sigma} \phi_j * \phi_j = \phi_j$  for all *j*. We then introduce for  $c \geq 1$  and  $k \geq 0$  the space

$$
l_c^{2,k} := \left\{ (z_j)_{j \in \mathbb{Z}} \ : \ c^{-k} \sum_{j \in \mathbb{Z}} (c^2 + |j|^2)^k |z_j|^2 < +\infty \right\}.
$$

**Theorem 10** *Let*  $c \geq 1$ *,*  $k \geq 0$ ,  $1 < p < +\infty$ *. Then*  $\langle \nabla \rangle_c^k L^p$  *is a retract of*  $L^p(l_c^{2,k})$ *, namely that the operators*

$$
\mathscr{J}: \mathscr{W}_c^{k,p} \to L^p(l_c^{2,k})
$$

$$
\mathscr{P}: L^p(l_c^{2,k}) \to \mathscr{W}_c^{k,p}
$$

*satisfy*  $\mathcal{P} \circ \mathcal{I} = id$  *on*  $\mathcal{W}_c^{k,p}$ *.* 

*Proof* First we show that  $\mathscr{J}: \mathscr{W}_{c}^{k,p} \to L^p(l_c^{2,k})$  is bounded. Since  $\mathscr{J} f = (\mathscr{F}^{-1} \chi_c) * \mathscr{J}_c^k f$ , where

$$
(\chi_c(\xi))_j := (c^2 + |\xi|^2)^{-k/2} \hat{\phi}_j(\xi), \quad j \ge 0
$$
  

$$
\mathscr{J}_c^k f := \mathscr{F}^{-1}((c^2 + |\xi|^2)^{k/2} \hat{f}),
$$

we have that for any  $\alpha \in \mathbb{N}^d$ 

$$
|\xi|^{\alpha}||D^{\alpha}\chi_c(\xi)||_{L(\mathbb{C},l_c^{2,k})} \leq |\xi|^{\alpha} \sum_{j\geq 0} (2^{jk}c^k|D^{\alpha}(\chi_c(\xi))_j|) \leq K_{\alpha}
$$

because the sum consists of at most two nonzero terms for each  $\xi$ . Thus  $\mathscr{J} \in$  $M_p(\mathcal{W}_c^{k,p}, L^p(l_c^{2,k}))$  by Mihlin multiplier theorem.

On the other hand, consider  $\mathscr{P}: L^p(l_c^{2,k}) \to \mathscr{W}_c^{k,p}$ .

Since  $\mathscr{J}_c^k \circ \mathscr{P} g = (\mathscr{F}^{-1} \delta_c) * g_{(k)}$ , where

$$
g = (g_j)_{j \ge 0},
$$
  
\n
$$
g_{(k)} := (2^{jk}g_j)_{j \ge 0},
$$
  
\n
$$
\delta_c(\xi)g := \sum_{j \ge 0} 2^{-jk}(c^2 + |\xi|^2)^{k/2} \tilde{\sigma} \phi_j(\xi)g_j,
$$

we have that for any  $\alpha \in \mathbb{N}^d$ 

$$
|\xi|^{\alpha} \|D^{\alpha}\delta_c(\xi)\|_{L(l_c^{2,k},\mathbb{C})} \leq |\xi|^{\alpha} \left[ \sum_{j\geq 0} (2^{-jk}c^{-k}|D^{\alpha}(c^2+|\xi|^2)^{k/2}\tilde{\sigma}\phi_j(\xi)|)^2 \right]^{1/2} \leq K_{\alpha},
$$

because the sum consists of at most four nonzero terms for each  $\xi$ . Thus  $\mathscr{P} \in M_{\infty}(L^p(L^{2,k}) \setminus \mathscr{W}^{k,p}_{\infty})$  by Mihlin multiplier theorem, and we can conclude.  $M_p(L^p(l_c^{2,k}), \mathcal{W}_c^{k,p})$  by Mihlin multiplier theorem, and we can conclude.

**Corollary 2** *Let*  $\theta \in (0, 1)$ *, and assume that*  $k_0$ *,*  $k_1 \ge 0$  *(k<sub>0</sub>*  $\ne k_1$ *) and*  $p_0$ *,*  $p_1 \in (1, +\infty)$ *satisfy*

$$
k = (1 - \theta)k_0 + \theta k_1,
$$
  
\n
$$
\frac{1}{p} = \frac{1 - \theta}{p_0} + \frac{\theta}{p_1}.
$$

*Then*  $(W_c^{k_0,p}, W_c^{k_1,p})_\theta = W_c^{k,p}$ .

<span id="page-66-1"></span>The previous corollary, combined with the classical *3 lines theorem* (Lemma 1.1.2 in [\[11](#page-67-11)]), immediately leads us to the following Proposition.

**Proposition 17** Let  $k_0 \neq k_1, 1 \leq p \leq +\infty$ , and assume that  $T : \mathscr{W}_c^{k_0,p} \to \mathscr{W}_c^{k_0,p}$  has norm *M*<sub>0</sub>*, and that*  $T : \mathscr{W}_c^{k_1,p} \to \mathscr{W}_c^{k_1,p}$  *has norm M*<sub>1</sub>*. Then* 

$$
T: \mathscr{W}_c^{k,p} \to \mathscr{W}_c^{k,p}, \ k = (1-\theta)k_0 + \theta k_1,
$$

 $with \, norm \, M \leq M_0^{1-\theta} M_1^{\theta}.$ 

Now we conclude with the proof of Theorem [5.](#page-9-1)

*Proof (Theorem [5\)](#page-9-1)* Estimates [\(21\)](#page-9-2) clearly follow from Proposition [1](#page-6-4) if we can prove that for any  $\alpha$  and for any  $q \in [2, 6]$ 

$$
\|\langle \nabla \rangle_c^{\alpha} \mathscr{W}_{\pm} \langle \nabla \rangle_c^{-\alpha} \|_{L^q \to L^q} \lesssim 1,
$$
\n(302)

$$
\|\langle \nabla \rangle_c^{\alpha} \mathscr{Z}_{\pm} \langle \nabla \rangle_c^{-\alpha} \|_{L^q \to L^q} \lesssim 1. \tag{303}
$$

Indeed in this case one would have

$$
\|\langle \nabla \rangle_c^{1/q-1/p} e^{it\mathcal{H}(x)} P_c(-\Delta + V)\psi_0\|_{L_t^p L_x^q} = \|\langle \nabla \rangle_c^{1/q-1/p} \mathcal{W}_\pm e^{it\langle \nabla \rangle_c} \mathcal{Z}_\pm \psi_0\|_{L_t^p L_x^q},
$$

but

$$
\|\langle \nabla \rangle_c^{1/q-1/p} \mathscr{W}_\pm e^{it\langle \nabla \rangle_c} \mathscr{Z}_\pm \psi_0\|_{L^q_x} \lesssim \|\langle \nabla \rangle_c^{1/q-1/p} e^{it\langle \nabla \rangle_c} \mathscr{Z}_\pm \psi_0\|_{L^q_x},
$$

<span id="page-66-0"></span> $\hat{\mathfrak{D}}$  Springer

hence

$$
\begin{split} \|\langle \nabla \rangle_c^{1/q-1/p} e^{it\mathcal{H}(x)} P_c(-\Delta + V) \psi_0 \|_{L_t^p L_x^q} &\lesssim c^{\frac{1}{q} - \frac{1}{p} - \frac{1}{2}} \|\langle \nabla \rangle_c^{1/2} \mathcal{Z}_{\pm} \psi_0 \|_{L^2} \\ &\lesssim c^{\frac{1}{q} - \frac{1}{p} - \frac{1}{2}} \|\langle \nabla \rangle_c^{1/2} \psi_0 \|_{L^2} .\end{split}
$$

To prove [\(303\)](#page-66-0) we first show that it holds for  $\alpha = 2k$ ,  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ . We argue by induction. The case  $k = 0$  is true by Theorem [6.](#page-9-3) Now, suppose that [\(303\)](#page-66-0) holds for  $\alpha = 2(k - 1)$ , then

$$
\begin{split}\n\|(c^2 - \Delta)^k \mathscr{Z}_{\pm}(c^2 - \Delta)^{-k}\|_{L^q \to L^q} \\
&= \|(c^2 - \Delta)(c^2 - \Delta)^{k-1} \mathscr{Z}_{\pm}(c^2 - \Delta)^{-(k-1)}(c^2 - \Delta)^{-1}\|_{L^q \to L^q} \\
&\leq c^2 \|(c^2 - \Delta)^{k-1} \mathscr{Z}_{\pm}(c^2 - \Delta)^{-(k-1)}(c^2 - \Delta)^{-1}\|_{L^q \to L^q} \\
&\quad + \|\Delta(c^2 - \Delta)^{k-1} \mathscr{Z}_{\pm}(c^2 - \Delta)^{-(k-1)}(c^2 - \Delta)^{-1}\|_{L^q \to L^q} \\
&\leq c^2 \|(c^2 - \Delta)^{k-1} \mathscr{Z}_{\pm}(c^2 - \Delta)^{-(k-1)}(c^2 - \Delta)^{-1}\|_{L^q \to L^q} \\
&\quad + \|\Delta(c^2 - \Delta)^{-1}(c^2 - \Delta)^{k-1} \mathscr{Z}_{\pm}(c^2 - \Delta)^{-(k-1)}\|_{L^q \to L^q} \\
&\quad + \|\Delta(c^2 - \Delta)^{k-1} \mathscr{Z}_{\pm}(c^2 - \Delta)^{-1}\|_{C^2 - \Delta)^{-(k-1)}}\|_{L^q \to L^q} \\
&\leq c^2 \|(c^2 - \Delta)^{-1}\|_{L^q \to L^q} + \|\Delta(c^2 - \Delta)^{-1}\|_{L^q \to L^q} \lesssim 1,\n\end{split}
$$

since

$$
\|[\mathscr{Z}_{\pm}, (c^2 - \Delta)^{-1}]\|_{L^2 \to L^2} \lesssim \frac{|\xi|}{(c^2 + |\xi|^2)^2} \le (c^2 + |\xi|^2)^{-3/2}.
$$

Similarly we can show [\(303\)](#page-66-0) for  $\alpha = -2k$ ,  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ . By Proposition [17](#page-66-1) one can extend the ult to any  $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$  via interpolation theory. result to any  $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$  via interpolation theory.

# **References**

- <span id="page-67-2"></span>1. Alazard, T., Carles, R.: Semi-classical limit of Schrödinger–Poisson equations in space dimension  $n \geq 3$ . J. Differ. Equ. **233**(1), 241–275 (2007)
- <span id="page-67-3"></span>2. Bambusi, D.: Nekhoroshev theorem for small amplitude solutions in nonlinear Schrödinger equations. Mathematische Zeitschrift **230**(2), 345–387 (1999)
- <span id="page-67-10"></span>3. Bambusi, D.: Galerkin averaging method and Poincaré normal form for some quasilinear PDEs. Annali della Scuola Normale Superiore di Pisa-Classe di Scienze **4**(4), 669–702 (2005)
- <span id="page-67-4"></span>4. Bambusi, D., Carati, A., Ponno, A.: The nonlinear Schrödinger equation as a resonant normal form. Discrete Contin. Dyn. Syst. Ser. B **2**(1), 109–128 (2002)
- <span id="page-67-9"></span>5. Bambusi, D., Cuccagna, S.: On dispersion of small energy solutions of the nonlinear Klein Gordon equation with a potential. Am. J. Math. **133**(5), 1421–1468 (2011)
- <span id="page-67-1"></span>6. Bambusi, D., Ponno, A.: On metastability in FPU. Commun. Math. Phys. **264**(2), 539–561 (2006)
- <span id="page-67-6"></span>7. Bao, W., Dong, X.: Analysis and comparison of numerical methods for the Klein–Gordon equation in the nonrelativistic limit regime. Numerische Mathematik **120**(2), 189–229 (2012)
- <span id="page-67-7"></span>8. Bao, W., Zhao, X.: A uniformly accurate (UA) multiscale time integrator Fourier pseudospectral method for the Klein–Gordon–Schrödinger equations in the nonrelativistic limit regime. Numerische Mathematik **135**, 833–873 (2016)
- <span id="page-67-8"></span>9. Baumstark, S., Faou, E., Schratz, K.: Uniformly accurate exponential-type integrators for Klein–Gordon equations with asymptotic convergence to the classical NLS splitting. Math. Comput. **87**, 1227–1254 (2017)
- <span id="page-67-0"></span>10. Bechouche, P., Mauser, N.J., Selberg, S.: Nonrelativistic limit of Klein–Gordon–Maxwell to Schrödinger– Poisson. Am. J. Math. **126**(1), 31–64 (2004)
- <span id="page-67-11"></span>11. Bergh, J., Lofstrom, J.: Interpolation Spaces: An Introduction. Springer, Berlin (1976)
- <span id="page-67-5"></span>12. Bouclet, J.M.: Littlewood–Paley decompositions on manifolds with ends. Bull. Soc. Math. Fr. **138**(1), 1–37 (2010)
- <span id="page-68-16"></span>13. Burq, N., Gérard, P., Tzvetkov, N.: Strichartz inequalities and the nonlinear Schrödinger equation on compact manifolds. Am. J. Math. **126**(3), 569–605 (2004)
- <span id="page-68-12"></span>14. Carles, R., Lucha, W., Moulay, E.: Higher-order Schrödinger and Hartree–Fock equations. J. Math. Phys. **56**(123), 122,301 (2015)
- <span id="page-68-17"></span>15. Carles, R., Moulay, E.: Higher order Schrödinger equations. J. Phys. A Math. Theor. **45**(39), 395,304 (2012)
- <span id="page-68-22"></span>16. Cazenave, T., Weissler, F.B.: The Cauchy problem for the critical nonlinear Schrödinger equation in *Hs*. Nonlinear Anal. Theory Methods Appl. **14**(10), 807–836 (1990)
- <span id="page-68-7"></span>17. Cho, Y., Ozawa, T.: On the semirelativistic Hartree-type equation. SIAM J. Math. Anal. **38**(4), 1060–1074 (2006)
- <span id="page-68-8"></span>18. Choi, W., Seok, J.: Nonrelativistic limit of standing waves for pseudo-relativistic nonlinear Schrödinger equations. J. Math. Phys. **57**(2), 021,510 (2016)
- <span id="page-68-15"></span>19. Cordero, E., Zucco, D.: Strichartz estimates for the vibrating plate equation. J. Evol. Equ. **11**(4), 827–845 (2011)
- <span id="page-68-25"></span>20. Cuccagna, S.: Stabilization of solutions to nonlinear Schrödinger equations. Commun. Pure Appl. Math. **54**(9), 1110–1145 (2001)
- <span id="page-68-14"></span>21. D'Ancona, P., Fanelli, L.: Strichartz and smoothing estimates for dispersive equations with magnetic potentials. Commun. Partial Differ. Equ. **33**(6), 1082–1112 (2008)
- <span id="page-68-27"></span>22. D'Ancona, P., Pierfelice, V., Visciglia, N.: Some remarks on the Schrödinger equation with a potential in *Lr <sup>t</sup> <sup>L</sup><sup>s</sup> <sup>x</sup>* . Mathematische Annalen **333**(2), 271–290 (2005)
- <span id="page-68-11"></span>23. Faou, E., Schratz, K.: Asymptotic preserving schemes for the Klein–Gordon equation in the nonrelativistic limit regime. Numerische Mathematik **126**(3), 441–469 (2014)
- <span id="page-68-21"></span>24. Fujiwara,M.: Über die obere Schranke des absoluten Betrages derWurzeln einer algebraischen Gleichung. Tohoku Math. J. First Ser. **10**, 167–171 (1916)
- <span id="page-68-28"></span>25. Goldberg, M.: Strichartz estimates for the Schrödinger equation with time-periodic *Ln*/<sup>2</sup> potentials. J. Funct. Anal. **256**(3), 718–746 (2009)
- <span id="page-68-24"></span>26. Grillakis, M., Shatah, J., Strauss, W.: Stability theory of solitary waves in the presence of symmetry. I. J. Funct. Anal. **74**(1), 160–197 (1987)
- <span id="page-68-9"></span>27. Han-Kwan, D., Nguyen, T.T., Rousset, F.: Long time estimates for the Vlasov–Maxwell system in the non-relativistic limit. Commun. Math. Phys. **363**(2), 389–434 (2018)
- <span id="page-68-13"></span>28. Hao, C., Hsiao, L., Wang, B.: Well-posedness of Cauchy problem for the fourth order nonlinear Schrödinger equations in multi-dimensional spaces. J. Math. Anal. Appl. **328**(1), 58–83 (2007)
- <span id="page-68-26"></span>29. Imaikin, V., Komech, A., Vainberg, B.: On scattering of solitons for the Klein–Gordon equation coupled to a particle. Commun. Math. Phys. **268**(2), 321–367 (2006)
- <span id="page-68-23"></span>30. Kenig, C.E., Ponce, G., Vega, L.: Small solutions to nonlinear Schrödinger equations. Annales de l'Institut Henri Poincare (C) Non Linear Analysis **10**(3), 255–288 (1993)
- <span id="page-68-19"></span>31. Kim, J., Arnold, A., Yao, X.: Global estimates of fundamental solutions for higher-order Schrödinger equations. Monatshefte für Mathematik **168**(2), 253–266 (2012)
- <span id="page-68-20"></span>32. Kobayashi, M., Sugimoto, M.: The inclusion relation between Sobolev and modulation spaces. J. Funct. Anal. **260**(11), 3189–3208 (2011)
- <span id="page-68-18"></span>33. Lämmerzahl, C.: The pseudodifferential operator square root of the Klein–Gordon equation. J. Math. Phys. **34**(9), 3918–3932 (1993)
- <span id="page-68-3"></span>34. Lu, Y., Zhang, Z.: Partially strong transparency conditions and a singular localization method in geometric optics. Arch. Ration. Mech. Anal. **222**(1), 245–283 (2016)
- <span id="page-68-0"></span>35. Machihara, S.: The nonrelativistic limit of the nonlinear Klein–Gordon equation. Funkcialaj Ekvacioj-Serio Internacia **44**(2), 243–252 (2001)
- <span id="page-68-1"></span>36. Machihara, S., Nakanishi, K., Ozawa, T.: Nonrelativistic limit in the energy space for nonlinear Klein– Gordon equations. Mathematische Annalen **322**(3), 603–621 (2002)
- <span id="page-68-10"></span>37. Maeda, M., Segata, Ji: Existence and stability of standing waves of fourth order nonlinear Schrödinger type equation related to vortex filament. Funkcialaj Ekvacioj **54**(1), 1–14 (2011)
- <span id="page-68-2"></span>38. Masmoudi, N., Nakanishi, K.: From nonlinear Klein–Gordon equation to a system of coupled nonlinear Schrödinger equations. Mathematische Annalen **324**(2), 359–389 (2002)
- <span id="page-68-4"></span>39. Masmoudi, N., Nakanishi, K.: Nonrelativistic limit from Maxwell–Klein–Gordon and Maxwell–Dirac to Poisson–Schrödinger. Int. Math. Res. Not. **2003**(13), 697–734 (2003)
- <span id="page-68-5"></span>40. Masmoudi, N., Nakanishi, K.: Energy convergence for singular limits of Zakharov type systems. Inventiones mathematicae **172**(3), 535–583 (2008)
- <span id="page-68-6"></span>41. Masmoudi, N., Nakanishi, K.: From the Klein–Gordon–Zakharov system to a singular nonlinear Schrödinger system. Annales de l'Institut Henri Poincare - Analyse Non Linéaire **27**(4), 1073–1096 (2010)
- <span id="page-69-0"></span>42. Najman, B.: The nonrelativistic limit of the nonlinear Klein–Gordon equation. Nonlinear Anal. Theory Methods Appl. **15**(3), 217–228 (1990)
- <span id="page-69-3"></span>43. Nakanishi, K.: Nonrelativistic limit of scattering theory for nonlinear Klein–Gordon equations. J. Differ. Equ. **180**(2), 453–470 (2002)
- <span id="page-69-2"></span>44. Nakanishi, K., et al.: Transfer of global wellposedness from nonlinear Klein–Gordon equation to nonlinear Schrödinger equation. Hokkaido Math. J. **37**(4), 749–771 (2008)
- <span id="page-69-7"></span>45. Ohta, M., Todorova, G.: Strong instability of standing waves for the nonlinear Klein–Gordon equation and the Klein–Gordon–Zakharov system. SIAM J. Math. Anal. **38**(6), 1912–1931 (2007)
- <span id="page-69-5"></span>46. Robert, D., Tamura, H.: Semi-classical estimates for resolvents and asymptotics for total scattering crosssections. Annales de l'IHP Physique théorique **46**(4), 415–442 (1987)
- <span id="page-69-17"></span>47. Rodnianski, I., Schlag, W., Soffer, A.: Asymptotic stability of N-soliton states of NLS (2003). arXiv preprint [arxiv:math/0309114](http://arxiv.org/abs/math/0309114)
- <span id="page-69-16"></span>48. Rodnianski, I., Schlag, W., Soffer, A.: Dispersive analysis of charge transfer models. Commun. Pure Appl. Math. **58**(2), 149–216 (2005)
- <span id="page-69-14"></span>49. Ruzhansky, M., Sugimoto, M., Wang, B.: Modulation spaces and nonlinear evolution equations. Prog. Math. **301**, 267–283 (2012)
- <span id="page-69-6"></span>50. Ruzhansky, M., Wang, B., Zhang, H.: Global well-posedness and scattering for the fourth order nonlinear Schrödinger equations with small data in modulation and Sobolev spaces. Journal de Mathématiques Pures et Appliquées **105**(1), 31–65 (2016)
- <span id="page-69-4"></span>51. Schneider, G.: Bounds for the nonlinear Schrödinger approximation of the Fermi–Pasta–Ulam system. Appl. Anal. **89**(9), 1523–1539 (2010)
- <span id="page-69-10"></span>52. Segata, J., et al.: Well-posedness for the fourth-order nonlinear Schrödinger-type equation related to the vortex filament. Differ. Integral Equ. **16**(7), 841–864 (2003)
- <span id="page-69-15"></span>53. Shatah, J., Strauss, W.: Instability of nonlinear bound states. Commun. Math. Phys. **100**(2), 173–190 (1985)
- <span id="page-69-18"></span>54. Soffer, A., Weinstein, M.I.: Resonances, radiation damping and instabilitym in Hamiltonian nonlinear wave equations. Inventiones mathematicae **136**(1), 9–74 (1999)
- <span id="page-69-11"></span>55. Sucher, J.: Relativistic invariance and the square-root Klein–Gordon equation. J. Math. Phys. **4**(1), 17–23 (1963)
- <span id="page-69-9"></span>56. Taylor, M.: Partial Differential Equations III. Nonlinear Equations. Applied Mathematical Sciences, vol. 117. Springer, New York (2011)
- <span id="page-69-1"></span>57. Tsutsumi, M.: Nonrelativistic approximation of nonlinear Klein–Gordon equations in two space dimensions. Nonlinear Anal. Theory Methods Appl. **8**(6), 637–643 (1984)
- <span id="page-69-12"></span>58. Wang, B., Han, L., Huang, C.: Global well-posedness and scattering for the derivative nonlinear Schrödinger equation with small rough data. Annales de l'Institut Henri Poincaré - Analyse Non Linéaire **26**(6), 2253–2281 (2009)
- <span id="page-69-13"></span>59. Wang, B., Hudzik, H.: The global Cauchy problem for the NLS and NLKG with small rough data. J. Differ. Equ. **232**(1), 36–73 (2007)
- <span id="page-69-8"></span>60. Yajima, K.: The *Wk*,*p*-continuity of wave operators for Schrödinger operators. J. Math. Soc. Jpn. **47**(3), 551–581 (1995)